

Revised with Audio Recordings & Dictionary

**PRACTICAL**

# Korean

**Speak Korean**  
Quickly and Effortlessly

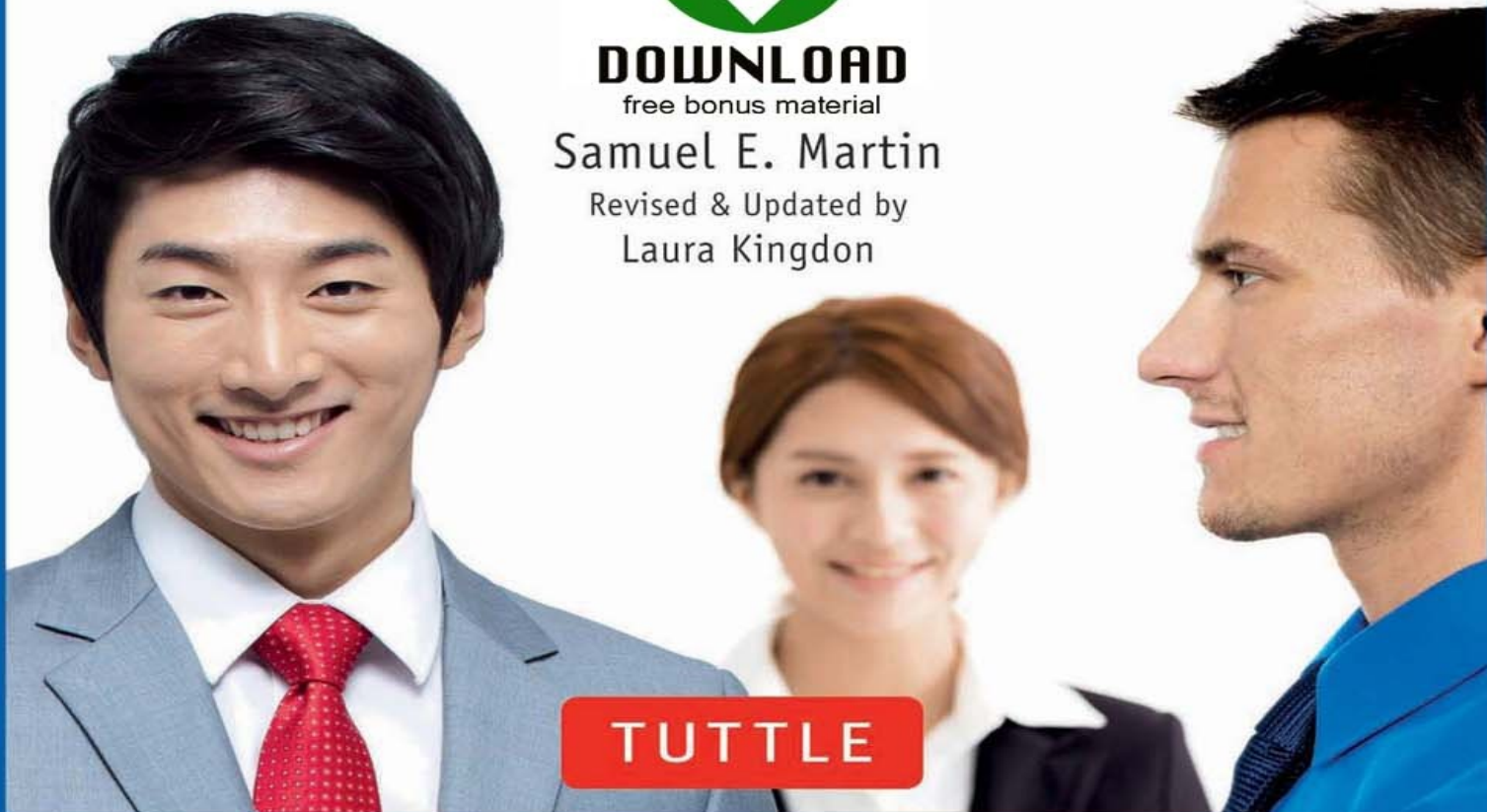


**DOWNLOAD**

free bonus material

Samuel E. Martin

Revised & Updated by  
Laura Kingdon



**TUTTLE**

**PRACTICAL**

**Korean**  
**Speak Korean**  
**Quickly and Effortlessly**

Samuel E. Martin

Revised & Updated by  
Laura Kingdon

**TUTTLE Publishing**

Tokyo | Rutland, Vermont | Singapore

## ABOUT TUTTLE

### “Books to Span the East and West”

Our core mission at Tuttle Publishing is to create books which bring people together one page at a time. Tuttle was founded in 1832 in the small New England town of Rutland, Vermont (USA). Our fundamental values remain as strong today as they were then—to publish best-in-class books informing the English-speaking world about the countries and peoples of Asia. The world has become a smaller place today and Asia’s economic, cultural and political influence has expanded, yet the need for meaningful dialogue and information about this diverse region has never been greater. Since 1948, Tuttle has been a leader in publishing books on the cultures, arts, cuisines, languages and literatures of Asia. Our authors and photographers have won numerous awards and Tuttle has published thousands of books on subjects ranging from martial arts to paper crafts. We welcome you to explore the wealth of information available on Asia at [www.tuttlepublishing.com](http://www.tuttlepublishing.com).

Published by Tuttle Publishing, an imprint of Periplus Editions (HK) Ltd.

[www.tuttlepublishing.com](http://www.tuttlepublishing.com)

Copyright © 2017 Periplus Editions (HK) Ltd All rights reserved.

ISBN 978-0-8048-4722-3; ISBN 978-1-4629-1952-9 (ebook) **Distributed by:**

#### **Asia Pacific**

Berkeley Books Pte Ltd, 61 Tai Seng Avenue #02-12, Singapore 534167

Tel: (65) 6280 1330; Fax: (65) 6280 6290

[inquiries@periplus.com.sg](mailto:inquiries@periplus.com.sg)

[www.periplus.com](http://www.periplus.com)

#### **Japan**

Tuttle Publishing, Yaekari Building, 3rd Floor, 5-4-12 Osaki,

Shinagawa-ku, Tokyo 141-0032

Tel: (81)3 5437-0171; Fax: (81)3 5437-0755

[sales@tuttle.co.jp](mailto:sales@tuttle.co.jp)

[www.tuttle.co.jp](http://www.tuttle.co.jp)

**North America, Latin America & Europe** Tuttle Publishing, 364 Innovation Drive, North Clarendon, VT 05759-9436, USA

Tel: 1 (802) 773-8930; Fax: 1 (802) 773 6993

[info@tuttlepublishing.com](mailto:info@tuttlepublishing.com)

[www.tuttlepublishing.com](http://www.tuttlepublishing.com)

20 19 18 17

6 5 4 3 2 1

Printed in Singapore 1708MP

TUTTLE PUBLISHING® is a registered trademark of Tuttle Publishing, a division of Periplus Editions (HK) Ltd.

# Contents About This Revised Edition

Introduction

Lesson 1: Vowels

Lesson 2: Consonants

Lesson 3: Sound Changes

Lesson 4: Names and Greetings

Lesson 5: Sentence Structure

Lesson 6: Some Useful Expressions

Lesson 7: More Useful Expressions

Lesson 8: “Is” and “Has”

Lesson 9: Styles of Speech

Lesson 10: Some Handy Nouns

Lesson 11: More Handy Nouns

Lesson 12: Particles

Lesson 13: More Particles

Lesson 14: Some Tricky Particles

Lesson 15: Numerals

Lesson 16: Nouns Ending in *-t*

Lesson 17: Counting Things

Lesson 18: Telling Time

Lesson 19: What Day Is It?

Lesson 20: Months and Years

Lesson 21: Negative Sentences

Lesson 22: Where Things Are

Lesson 23: Verbs and Adjectives

Lesson 24: Relatives

Lesson 25: Honorifics

Lesson 26: The Word “But”  
Lesson 27: Infinitives and Favors  
Lesson 28: Expressing “May” and “Must”  
Lesson 29: Helping Verbs  
Lesson 30: The *-go* Verb Form  
Lesson 31: Wants and Likes  
Lesson 32: Infinitive + *seo* = “And So”  
Lesson 33: Some Peculiar Verb Types  
Lesson 34: The Modifiers *-eun* and *-n*  
Lesson 35: The Verb Modifier *-neun*  
Lesson 36: “Ever,” “Never” and “Sometimes”  
Lesson 37: “Before,” “After” and “While”  
Lesson 38: In the Future  
Lesson 39: “Knows” and “Can”  
Lesson 40: “When” and “If”  
Lesson 41: Hoping and Wishing  
Lesson 42: What the Weather Looks Like  
Lesson 43: “Because”  
Lesson 44: Casual Remarks Using *-jiyo*  
Lesson 45: Some Abbreviations  
Lesson 46: The Structure of Verb Forms  
Romanization Table  
English-Korean Dictionary

# About This Revised Edition

Samuel E. Martin's guide to learning Korean has firmly stood the test of time, as thousands of beginning learners continue to attest; his book has remained continuously in print since its original release in 1954.

It's an extremely useful, compact guide that's especially aimed at tourists and visitors to Korea, and with more people now visiting Korea than ever before, we hope this new revised edition will be greeted with enthusiasm.

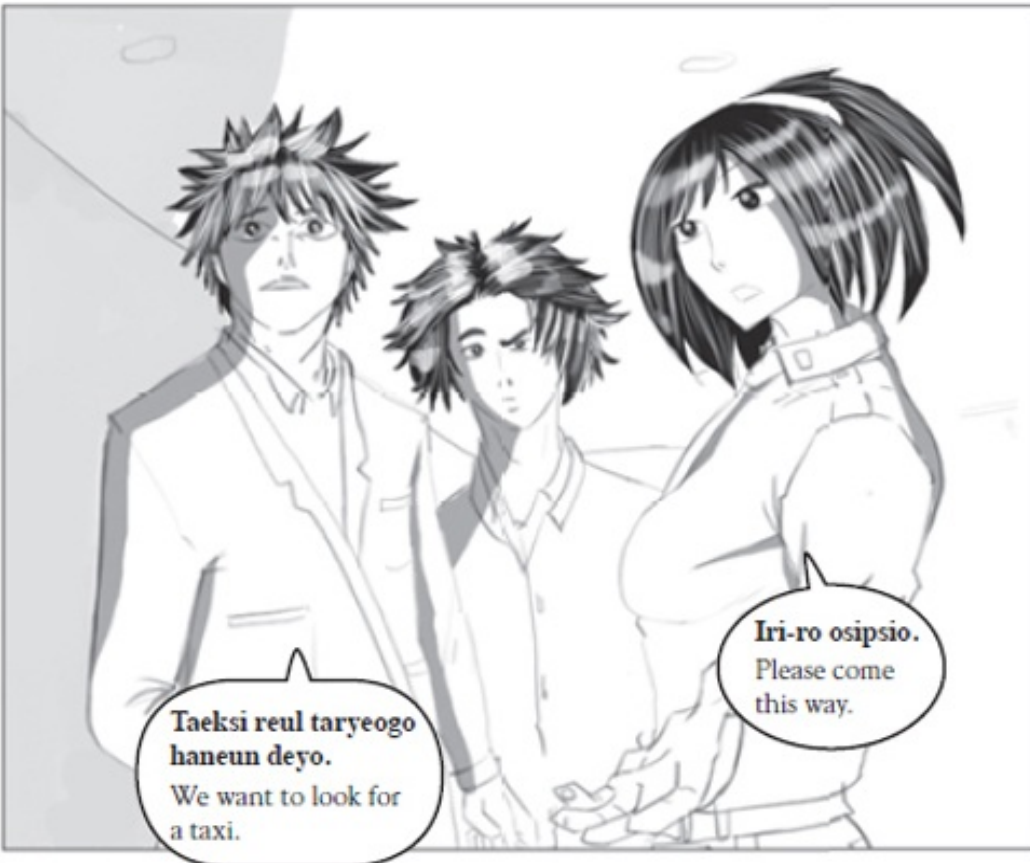
This revised edition reflects several improvements, and some of the examples and phrases have been updated to reflect current usage. Korean text (**Hangeul**) is included throughout, and the romanization system follows the Korean government's most recent method.

Two sets of native-speaker recordings for all Korean words and sentences are included in the disc (each word/sentence is read twice)—these enable the reader to have an idea of how different people pronounce the same words. The audios are grouped by lessons.

We hope that *Practical Korean* helps you to succeed with the Korean language, just as it's helped many others.







# Introduction

THIS BOOK has been written to fill a specific need: that of the hundreds of thousands of people now visiting Korea for business or holidays, or even living there for a year or two, who wish to learn something of the language spoken around them. The structure of Korean is peculiarly complex, and difficulties plague the foreign student from the very beginning. I have attempted to simplify some of the common problems and to acquaint the reader with the most useful way to say a lot of everyday things, without having to memorize long lists of grammatical rules.

The sentences are almost all given in the Polite (**yo**) style, which is both the simplest and the most widely useful. From this style, another common style—the Intimate style—is easily derived simply by dropping the final particle. Koreans who look at the book will miss the Formal (**-seumnida**) style which they feel more appropriate to use with foreigners on first acquaintance. My purpose in sticking to one style is to provide the reader with the means to say a great many different things, rather than teach him or her a great many ways to say the same thing. From an academic point of view, this approach has certain drawbacks. From a practical point of view, however, it is the quickest and simplest way to put the foreigner into direct communication with Koreans, and that is the aim of this book.

The material is presented using the romanization method that is officially authorized by the Korean government. The equivalents in other romanization systems are given in the table at the very end of this book.

The reader who plans to go on with his or her study of Korean beyond the material contained in this book will probably find it advisable to do so in the native script (**Hangeul**). For a scientific description of the structure of Korean, the reader is referred to the author's other publications, *Korean Phonemics* and *Korean Morphophonemics*.

I hope that the material contained in this book—while perhaps oversimplifying a complicated language—will be of some immediate, practical use to the reader who wants to learn some Korean. And I hope some of those who learn Korean in a hurry will find such an interest in the language and the people who speak it that they will someday spare the time and patience needed to master the language more in depth.

SAMUEL E. MARTIN



**How to Download the Bonus Material of this Book.**

1. You must have an internet connection.
2. Type the URL below into your web browser.  
<http://www.tuttlepublishing.com/practical-korean-downloadable-cd-content>

For support email us at [info@tuttlepublishing.com](mailto:info@tuttlepublishing.com).

## LESSON 1

# Vowels

The vowels and combinations of **y** or **w** with a vowel are pronounced somewhat as follows:

|            |   |                                                                                                                                |
|------------|---|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>i</b>   |   | as in <i>marine</i> ( <i>meet</i> , <i>cheat</i> )                                                                             |
| <b>wi</b>  | ㅍ | as in <i>we</i><br>( <i>queen</i> , <i>between</i> , <i>sweet</i> )                                                            |
| <b>e</b>   | ㅍ | This is pronounced identically to <b>ae</b> in modern Korean.<br><br>There isn't an exact English equivalent.                  |
| <b>ye</b>  | ㅍ | Halfway between "yay" and the "ye" in <i>yes</i> (or <i>yeah</i> )                                                             |
| <b>weh</b> | ㅍ | More like the English word <i>way</i> , but about halfway to "weh."                                                            |
| <b>ae</b>  | ㅍ | The closest English equivalent is like the English "eh"—sort of between "ay" and "e." There isn't an exact English equivalent. |
| <b>yae</b> | ㅍ | Halfway between "yay" and the "ye" in <i>yes</i>                                                                               |
| <b>wae</b> | ㅍ | More like the English word <i>way</i> , but about halfway to "weh."                                                            |
| <b>oe</b>  | ㅍ | usually pronounced just like the English word <i>way</i> , but halfway to "weh"                                                |
| <b>a</b>   | ㅍ | as <i>ah</i><br>( <i>father</i> )                                                                                              |

|            |    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|------------|----|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>ya</b>  | ㅏ  | as <i>yard</i> , German <i>ja</i>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| <b>wa</b>  | ㅘ  | as <i>Wah</i> shington (but not <i>Wor</i> shington or <i>Woh</i> shington!)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| <b>eu</b>  | ㅡ  | This is like the French sound <i>eu</i> —there is no English equivalent.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| <b>u</b>   | ㅜ  | as <i>June</i> , <i>soon</i> , <i>too</i> (WITH LIPS PUSHED OUT)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| <b>yu</b>  | ㅠ  | as <i>you</i> ,<br><i>cue</i> , <i>pew</i> (WITH LIPS PUSHED OUT)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| <b>eo</b>  | ㅓ  | between <i>song</i> and <i>sung</i> ; like <i>song</i> , <i>law</i> , <i>bought</i> (WITH LIPS PULLED BACK HARD); or like <i>sung</i> , <i>lung</i> , <i>butt</i> (WITH TONGUE PULLED BACK AND PUSHED DOWN, AS IF WITH A SPOON)                                                                              |
| <b>yeo</b> | ㅕ  | between <i>yawn</i> and <i>young</i>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| <b>wo</b>  | ㅝ  | between <i>wall</i> and <i>won</i>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| <b>o</b>   | ㅚ  | as in <i>no</i>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| <b>yo</b>  | ㅜㅝ | as in <i>yokel</i>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| <b>ui</b>  | ㅟ  | The combination <b>ui</b> has three different pronunciations depending on the usage: (1) At the beginning of a word it is pronounced like <b>u</b> .<br><br>(2) At the end of a word it is pronounced like <b>i</b> .<br><br>(3) As a separate particle meaning <i>of</i> , it is pronounced like <b>e</b> . |

In this book, you will find the first pronunciation indicated as **ui(i)** and the second as **eu i**. But you will have to remember that the particle **ui** is pronounced like **e**.

You will note that letters in Korean are not written independently as in English

but rather are connected in syllables. Each syllable is read left-right and up-down, and some are only left-right while some are only up-down and some are both. Here are some examples: Left-right: ㅇ (place marker) + ㅏ (a) = 아 (a) ㄴ (n) + ㅛ (eo) = 너 neo Up-down: ㄱ (g) + ㅜ (o) = 고 (go) ㅇ (place marker) + ㅜ (u) + ㅡ (l) = 울 ul Both: ㄴ (n) + ㅞ (ae) + ㅁ (m) = 냄 naem ㅈ (j) + ㅣ (i) + ㅋ (k) = 직 jik Here are some common words to practice the vowels on:

|                 |                     |     |
|-----------------|---------------------|-----|
| <b>i</b>        | tooth               | 이   |
| <b>jip</b>      | house               | 집   |
| <b>gwi</b>      | ear                 | 귀   |
| <b>jwi</b>      | rat                 | 쥐   |
| <b>dwi</b>      | behind              | 뒤   |
| <b>ne</b>       | yes                 | 네   |
| <b>ye</b>       | yes                 | 예   |
| <b>gyohoe</b>   | church              | 교회  |
| <b>hoeui</b>    | meeting             | 회의  |
| <b>Choe</b>     | Choe (name)         | 최   |
| <b>soe</b>      | iron                | 쇠   |
| <b>sae</b>      | bird                | 새   |
| <b>sonyeo</b>   | girl                | 소녀  |
| <b>agi</b>      | baby                | 아기  |
| <b>hae</b>      | sun, year           | 해   |
| <b>maeil</b>    | every day           | 매일  |
| <b>iyagi</b>    | story, talk         | 이야기 |
| <b>wae</b>      | why                 | 왜   |
| <b>mal</b>      | horse               | 말   |
| <b>bam</b>      | night               | 밤   |
| <b>joreugi</b>  | badger; tighten     | 조르기 |
| <b>wanbyeok</b> | perfect, perfection | 완벽  |
| <b>gwanggo</b>  | advertisement       | 광고  |
| <b>eumsik</b>   | food                | 음식  |
| <b>eunhaeng</b> | bank                | 은행  |

|                    |                 |       |
|--------------------|-----------------|-------|
| <b>geurim</b>      | picture         | 그림    |
| <b>nun</b>         | eye; snow       | 눈     |
| <b>mu</b>          | turnip          | 무     |
| <b>yuri</b>        | glass           | 유리    |
| <b>dubu</b>        | bean-curd, tofu | 두부    |
| <b>gyuyul</b>      | regulations     | 규율    |
| <b>meonjeo</b>     | first of all    | 먼저    |
| <b>eonje</b>       | when            | 언제    |
| <b>neomu mani</b>  | too much        | 너무 많이 |
| <b>gyeongjehak</b> | economics       | 경제학   |
| <b>geokkjeong</b>  | worry           | 걱정    |
| <b>won</b>         | won (currency)  | 원     |
| <b>ssaum</b>       | fight           | 싸움    |
| <b>don</b>         | money           | 돈     |
| <b>sori</b>        | sound           | 소리    |
| <b>gong</b>        | ball            | 공     |
| <b>pyo</b>         | ticket          | 표     |
| <b>hakgyo</b>      | school          | 학교    |
| <b>uija</b>        | chair           | 의자    |
| <b>uisa</b>        | doctor          | 의사    |
| <b>uimi</b>        | meaning         | 의미    |
| <b>jipjung</b>     | attention       | 집중    |
| <b>uinon</b>       | discussion      | 의논    |

## LESSON 2

**Consonants** The consonants **m** □, **n** ⊥, and **h** ≡ are pronounced much like in English.

The consonant written **ng** ○ is pronounced as in *sing*, *singer* (but NOT as in English *finger* which sounds like *fingger*). You will often see the same letter ○ at the beginning of a Korean syllable. In this case, it has no sound. It is only pronounced as **ng** at the end of a syllable.

The consonants **b** ⊕, **d** ⊖, and **g** ⊗ sound like weakly articulated English *pin*, *tin*, *kin*; but at the end of a syllable (*hip*, *hit*, *hick*) be careful not to give these consonants a special release—just shut the sound off.

The sounds written **p** ⊕, **t** ⊖ and **k** ⊗ are said with a heavy puff of breath like English *upheaval*, *penthouse*, *cookhouse*.

The sounds written **pp** ⊕⊕, **tt** ⊖⊖, and **kk** ⊗⊗ are pronounced with the throat and mouth muscles very tense and released sharp with no puff of breath, a little like English *spy*, *stay*, *skid*.

**B**, **d**, and **g** are LAX; **p**, **t**, and **k** are BREATHY; and **pp**, **tt**, and **kk** are TENSE. In the same way **j** ⊘ is lax (as in English *church* weakly articulated), **ch** ⊙ is breathy (as in English *beach house*), and **jj** ⊘⊘ is tense.

You may hear **pp**, **tt**, **kk**, and **jj** like English *bit*, *dip*, *go*, and *Joe*— if you pronounce these words with a specially strong emphasis. But ordinarily English *b*, *d*, *g*, and *j* are rather weakly pronounced like the way Korean **b**, **d**, **g**, and **j** sound between voiced sounds.

The Korean sound **s** ^ is lax and sounds like a very weak English *s*—or, sometimes, especially in front of the vowel **i**, like English *sh*. The Korean sound **ss** ^^ is tense and sounds like a very emphatic English *s*. Don't worry if you can't hear the difference between these two; there are few situations in which you will be misunderstood if you confuse them.

The Korean sound which we write sometimes **l** ≡ and sometimes **r** ≡ is very difficult for Americans because it sounds like a number of different English sounds. Within a word when it sounds like the *l* in *fill* we write it **l**; when it sounds like the *r* in British *berry* (or the *t* in English *Betty*; or the Japanese *r*, or



the single Spanish *r*) we write it **r**.

Here are some common words to practice the consonants.

|               |                     |    |
|---------------|---------------------|----|
| <b>bi</b>     | rain                | 비  |
| <b>pi</b>     | blood               | 피  |
| <b>maekju</b> | beer                | 맥주 |
| <b>byeo</b>   | rice plant          | 벼  |
| <b>pyo</b>    | ticket              | 표  |
| <b>ppyeo</b>  | bone                | 뼈  |
| <b>dal</b>    | moon                | 달  |
| <b>tal</b>    | mask                | 탈  |
| <b>ttal</b>   | daughter            | 딸  |
| <b>do</b>     | province            | 도  |
| <b>top</b>    | a saw               | 톱  |
| <b>tto</b>    | again, yet          | 또  |
| <b>gi</b>     | spirit, disposition | 기  |
| <b>ki</b>     | height, size        | 키  |
| <b>kki</b>    | a meal              | 끼  |
| <b>gae</b>    | dog                 | 개  |
| <b>kal</b>    | knife               | 칼  |
| <b>kkae</b>   | sesame seed         | 깨  |
| <b>jo</b>     | millet              | 조  |
| <b>cho</b>    | candle              | 초  |
| <b>jjok</b>   | side, direction     | 쪽  |
| <b>sal</b>    | flesh               | 살  |
| <b>ssal</b>   | uncooked rice       | 쌀  |
| <b>seoda</b>  | stands up           | 서다 |
| <b>sseuda</b> | writes              | 쓰다 |
| <b>dambae</b> | cigarettes          | 담배 |
| <b>gongbu</b> | study               | 공부 |
| <b>Ilbon</b>  | Japan               | 일본 |

|                     |                     |      |
|---------------------|---------------------|------|
| <b>yeoseot beon</b> | six times           | 여섯 번 |
| <b>chimdae</b>      | bed                 | 침대   |
| <b>bando</b>        | peninsula           | 반도   |
| <b>dalda</b>        | is sweet            | 달다   |
| <b>chuptta</b>      | is cold             | 춡다   |
| <b>jaktta</b>       | is small            | 작다   |
| <b>Yeongguk</b>     | England             | 영국   |
| <b>gwail</b>        | fruit               | 과일   |
| <b>sipgu</b>        | nineteen            | 십구   |
| <b>namja</b>        | man, male           | 남자   |
| <b>hwanja</b>       | patient             | 환자   |
| <b>maekju</b>       | beer                | 맥주   |
| <b>jongi</b>        | paper               | 종이   |
| <b>dongan</b>       | interval; baby face | 동안   |
| <b>iri</b>          | this way            | 이리   |
| <b>geureoke</b>     | in that way, so     | 그렇게  |
| <b>leseutorang</b>  | restaurant          | 레스토랑 |
| <b>ladio</b>        | radio               | 라디오  |
| <b>piryo</b>        | necessity           | 필요   |
| <b>parwol</b>       | August              | 팔월   |
| <b>il</b>           | work, job           | 일    |
| <b>mul</b>          | water               | 물    |
| <b>mullon</b>       | of course           | 물론   |
| <b>ppalli</b>       | fast                | 빨리   |

## LESSON 3

**Sound Changes** When you link words together without pausing between, certain sound changes take place. If the first word ends in a consonant and the second begins with a vowel, the final consonant of the first word is pronounced as the initial consonant of the second word:

|               |    |                     |                              |
|---------------|----|---------------------|------------------------------|
|               |    |                     | NOTE PRONUNCIATION<br>CHANGE |
| <b>seom-i</b> | 섬이 | island (as subject) | = <b>seo mi</b>              |
| <b>seom-e</b> | 섬에 | to the island       | = <b>seo me</b>              |

If the final consonant is **p, t, ch,** or **k** it changes in sound to **b, d, j,** or **g**:

|                 |     |                             |                              |
|-----------------|-----|-----------------------------|------------------------------|
|                 |     |                             | NOTE PRONUNCIATION<br>CHANGE |
| <b>chaek-i</b>  | 책이  | book (as subject)           | <b>chae gi</b>               |
| <b>hanguk-e</b> | 한국에 | to Korea                    | <b>Hangu ge</b>              |
| <b>bap-i</b>    | 밥이  | cooked rice (as<br>subject) | <b>ba bi</b>                 |
| <b>naj-e</b>    | 낮에  | in the daytime              | <b>na je</b>                 |

If the final consonant is **l,** it changes in sound to **r**:

|                |    |                   |                              |
|----------------|----|-------------------|------------------------------|
|                |    |                   | NOTE PRONUNCIATION<br>CHANGE |
| <b>il-i</b>    | 일이 | work (as subject) | = <b>i ri</b>                |
| <b>mul-eul</b> | 물을 | water (as object) | = <b>mu reul</b>             |

If the second word begins with **m** or **n** and the first word ends in **p, t,** or **k,** these

change to **m**, **n**, and **ng** respectively:

|                     |     |             |                           |
|---------------------|-----|-------------|---------------------------|
|                     |     |             | NOTE PRONUNCIATION CHANGE |
| <b>jib mada</b>     | 집마다 | every house | <b>jim mada</b>           |
| <b>mot meok kko</b> | 못먹고 | can't eat   | <b>mon meok kko</b>       |
| <b>chaek mada</b>   | 책마다 | every book  | <b>chaeng mada</b>        |

The combinations **tp**, **ts**, and **tk** usually sound like **pp**, **ss**, and **kk**:

|                  |     |           |                           |
|------------------|-----|-----------|---------------------------|
|                  |     |           | NOTE PRONUNCIATION CHANGE |
| <b>mot bwayo</b> | 못봐요 | can't see | <b>mo ppwayo</b>          |
| <b>mot sayo</b>  | 못사요 | can't buy | <b>mo ssayo</b>           |
| <b>mot gayo</b>  | 못가요 | can't go  | <b>mo kkayo</b>           |

At the end of a word before a pause or another consonant, the only consonants which occur are **p**, **t**, **k**, **m**, **n**, **ng**, and **l**. But there are a few words which have basic forms (the forms you hear when linked with a following word beginning with a vowel) in other consonant combinations. These are changed as follows (see also Lesson 16):

BEFORE VOWEL

**P**  
**jib-e** 집에 to the house

**Sh**  
**gapshi** price (subj.)  
 값이

BEFORE PAUSE OR CONSONANT

**P**  
**jip** 집 house, **jipdo** 집도 house too

**P**  
**gaps** (not *kap*) 값 price;  
**gapdo** 값도 (the **s** is silent here) price too

Here the **s** is moved to the next syllable and becomes **sh** because the Korean **s** ㅅ is pronounced as **sh** before an **i**. The word is actually pronounced **gapshi**.

|                     |                  |                                   |
|---------------------|------------------|-----------------------------------|
| <b>S</b>            |                  | <b>T</b>                          |
| <b>oseul</b>        | clothes (object) | <b>ot</b> 옷 clothes;              |
| 옷을                  |                  | <b>otdo</b> 옷도 clothes too        |
| BEFORE VOWEL        |                  | BEFORE PAUSE OR CONSONANT         |
| <b>N</b>            |                  | <b>N</b>                          |
| <b>jeong woneun</b> | garden (topic)   | <b>jeongwon</b> 정원 garden;        |
| 정원은                 |                  | <b>jeongwon do</b> 정원도 garden too |
| <b>CH</b>           |                  | <b>T</b>                          |
| <b>kkocheun</b>     | flower (topic)   | <b>kkot</b> 꽃 flower;             |
| 꽃은                  |                  | <b>kkotdo</b> 꽃도 flower too       |
| <b>J</b>            |                  | <b>T</b>                          |
| <b>naje</b>         | in the daytime   | <b>nat</b> 낮 daytime;             |
| 낮에                  |                  | <b>natdo</b> 낮도 daytime too       |
| <b>KK</b>           |                  | <b>K</b>                          |
| <b>bakke</b>        | outside          | <b>bakk</b> 밖 outside;            |
| 밖에                  |                  | <b>bakkdo</b> 밖도 outside too      |
| <b>LG</b>           |                  | <b>K</b>                          |
| <b>dalgi</b>        | chicken (subj.)  | <b>dak</b> 닭 chicken;             |
| 닭이                  |                  | <b>dakdo</b> 닭도 chicken too       |

There are certain other sound changes which are less regular. You may also notice sound variants. Sometimes the same thing will be pronounced in two different ways even by the same speaker. The most common of these is the dropping of **h** between voiced sounds:

|                          |                 |      |
|--------------------------|-----------------|------|
| <b>man(h)i</b>           | lots            | 많이   |
| <b>bang(h)ak</b>         | school vacation | 방학   |
| <b>a(h)op</b>            | nine            | 아홉   |
| <b>pyeong(h)waropkke</b> | peacefully      | 평화롭게 |
| <b>eun(h)aeng</b>        | bank            | 은행   |

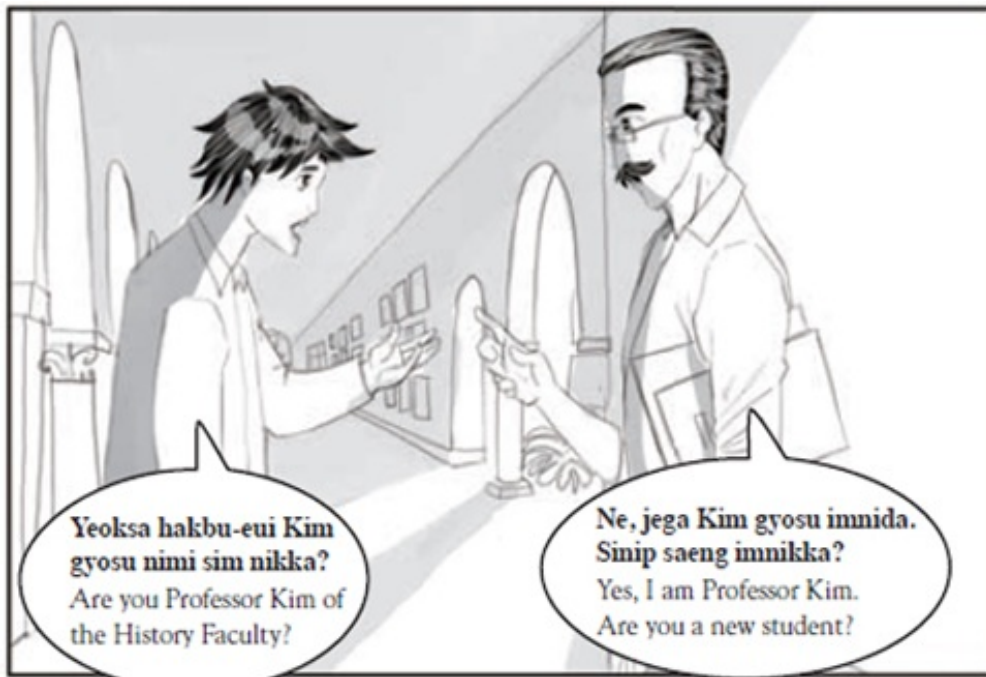
You may also notice that **w** sometimes drops, especially after **b, p, pp, m, u, o**:

| WRITTEN AS:    |           |    | PRONOUNCED AS: |
|----------------|-----------|----|----------------|
| <b>jeomwon</b> | clerk     | 점원 | <b>jeomeon</b> |
| <b>Guwol</b>   | September | 구월 | <b>Gueol</b>   |
| <b>Samwol</b>  | March     | 삼월 | <b>Sameol</b>  |
| <b>Owol</b>    | May       | 오월 | <b>Oeol</b>    |

One irregular sound change which is quite common is the replacement of an initial **b, d, j, s, or g** by their tense counterparts **pp, tt, jj, ss, or kk**. In this book, the “reinforcement” of the initial sound is sometimes shown with parentheses: **(p)p, (t)t, (j)j, (s)s, or (k)k**. For example:

| WRITTEN AS:     |            |     | PRONOUNCED AS:   |
|-----------------|------------|-----|------------------|
| <b>eojetbam</b> | last night | 어젯밤 | <b>eojetppam</b> |
| <b>yeoldul</b>  | twelve     | 열둘  | <b>yeolttul</b>  |

NOTE: You will notice that a few Korean consonants change sounds depending on their position in a syllable. The letter ㅁ is pronounced as **b** at the beginning of a syllable (밤, **bam**) but **p** at the end (엿, **eop**). The letter ㄷ is pronounced as **d** at the beginning and **t** at the end (달, **dat**). The letter ㄱ is pronounced as **g** at the beginning and **k** at the end (각, **gak**). Finally, the letter ㄹ is pronounced more like **r** at the beginning and more like **l** at the end (를, **reul**). The letters ㅍ (**p**), ㅋ (**k**), and ㅌ (**t**) are always pronounced the same way.



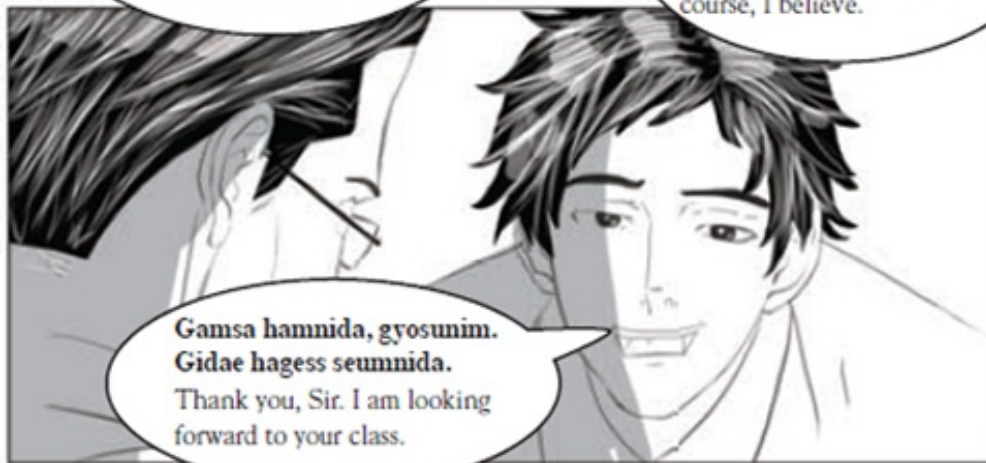
**Yeoksa hakbu-eui Kim  
gyosu nimi sim nikka?**  
Are you Professor Kim of  
the History Faculty?

**Ne, jega Kim gyosu innida.  
Sinip saeng innikka?**  
Yes, I am Professor Kim.  
Are you a new student?



**Ye, gyosunim. Shinip saeng  
indeyo. Gyosunim gwamokeul  
sugang haryeogo hammida.**  
Yes, Professor. I am a first year  
student doing your course.

**Banga woyo! Haggwa sigani  
maeume deul geomnida.  
Yeolsimhi haseyo.**  
Welcome! You will enjoy the  
course, I believe.



**Gamsa hammida, gyosunim.  
Gidae hagess seumnida.**  
Thank you, Sir. I am looking  
forward to your class.

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_



## LESSON 4

# Names and Greetings

The sentences in this chapter are all very polite and are to be used with adult strangers.

### **Annyeong haseyo?**

안녕하세요?

(Literally it means, are you well?) How are you? / Hello.

### **Gomapseumnida.**

고맙습니다.

Thank you.

### **Joesong hamnida.**

죄송합니다.

My apologies, I'm sorry.

### **Mian hamnida.**

미안합니다.

I'm sorry.

### **Sillye haesseumnida.**

실례했습니다.

Excuse me (for something I did).

### **Sillye hamnida.**

실례합니다.

Excuse me (for something I am doing).

### **Sillye hagesseumnida.**

실례하겠습니다.

Excuse me (for something I am going to do).

**Cheonman eyo.**

천만에요.

(It's one in 10 million words =) Not at all. Think nothing of it.

**Gwaen chan seumnikka?**

괜찮습니까?

Is it all right? May I?

or **Josseumnikka?**

좋습니까?

Is it all right? May I? (more polite expression) **Gwaen chan seumnida.**

괜찮습니다.

It makes no difference; it's OK; you may.

**Josseumnida.**

좋습니다.

It's all right; it's good; it's fine: you may.

**Eoseo deureoosipsio.**

어서 들어오십시오.

Come right in.

**Tto boepgesseumnida.**

또 뵈겠습니다.

See you later. So long.

**Pyeonhage mani deuseyo.**

편하게 많이 드세요.

Please help yourself.

**Pyeonhage iseuseyo.**

편하게 있으세요.

Please make yourself at home.

**Annyeong(h)i gasipsio.**

안녕히 가십시오.

Goodbye (to one who is leaving).

### **Annyeong(h)i gyesipsio.**

안녕히 계십시오.

Goodbye (to one who is staying).

A Korean has two names: the family name is followed by a personal name. Most of the family names are of one syllable like **Gim, Bak, Baek, Choe, Jang, Min, Yu, Im**, but a few unusual ones have two syllables like **Hwangbo**. If the family name has one syllable, the personal name usually has two: **I Seung man** (Syngman Rhee). **Gim Il(s)seong** (Kim Ilsung). This system, together with most of the names themselves, was borrowed from China. Some names are exceptions to this system.

There is a trend toward more traditionally Korean names such as Areum 아름, Sora 소라 or Haneul 하늘. As English has grown in popularity in Korea in recent years, it's also not uncommon to meet Korean children with English names written in Korean—for example, a child might be named 이삭 (**isak**, intended to be Isaac) or 제니 (Jenny).

There is a word for *you* (**dangsin**) but instead of using it the Koreans usually refer to a person either by title and name: **Gim ssi** = *You* (*Mr., Mrs. or Miss Kim*) or by title; for example, a teacher might be called **seonsaengnim** (선생님). This ending 님 (**nim**) is used toward people to whom you want to be extremely polite. 씨 (**ssi**) is also a polite term, but slightly less so than 님.

The word for *I, me* is **na** 나; for *my* **nae** 내. For *he* or *she* you say **geusaram** 그 사람 or **geui** 그의 = *that person*, for *his* or *hers* you say **geu saram-ui** 사람의 or just **geu** 그 = *of that person*. For *they, them* you can say either **geusaram** or **geu saramdeul** 그 사람들. For *their* **geu saramdeul-ui** 그 사람들의. Uri 우리 means *we* or *our* but sometimes it translates into English *me* or *my*.

You will notice that many common expressions have meanings which seem different from their literal translations. These literal translations are intended only as a help in remembering the words in the expressions.

## LESSON 5

**Sentence Structure** English sentences seem to tell you a lot more about a given situation than their equivalents in Korean. That is because the Korean likes to leave out any details that seem obvious from the context or the situation. It's a rare English sentence that has no subject, but we use such sentences in postcards (*Having a fine time. Wish you were here.*) and in commands (*Keep off the grass. Send more money.*). In Korean it is quite common to omit the subject, and often many other parts of the equivalent English sentence, too. You'll often wonder why the Korean words for *some*, *any*, *it* and other common little English expressions seldom appear in the Korean versions of examples.

A Korean sentence is quite complete with nothing but a verb: **Haeyo.**

해요.

(Someone) does (something).

The subject and object may simply be implied. If the Korean wants to supply further details about the situation, he puts them in before the verb. For example, if he wants to tell just what kind of an action the “does” refers to: **Gongbu haeyo.**

공부해요.

(Someone) does STUDYING = studies (something).

If it seems important to add the object of the action: **Hangukmal-eul gongbu haeyo.**

한국말을 공부해요.

(Someone) studies KOREAN.

And the place: **Hakgyo-eseo Hangukmal-eul gongbu haeyo.**

학교에서 한국말을 공부해요.

(Someone) studies Korean IN SCHOOL.

And the time: **Jigeum hakgyo-eseo Hangukmal-eul gongbu haeyo.**

지금 학교에서 한국말을 공부해요.

(Someone) studies Korean in school NOW.

And the subject of the action (the actor): **Haksaeng-i jigeum hakgyo-eseo Hangukmal-eul gongbu haeyo.**

학생이 지금 학교에서 한국말을 공부해요.

THE STUDENT studies Korean in school now.

The order in which you put the additional information like object, place, time, and subject depends largely on the importance of the information. The indispensable news in every sentence is the verb— this goes at the end.

In other words, if you wanted to say the same thing a little more briefly, you'd likely chop off the earlier parts of the sentence first. Since sometimes the SUBJECT is so well known you don't have to mention it, but at other times it's the OBJECT—or the place, or the time, or something else—there isn't any fixed order. If all other things are equal—that is, if you're equally in the dark about subject and object— it's usually better to keep the object near the verb.





## LESSON 6

**Some Useful Expressions** Unless otherwise specified, all expressions in this chapter are in the familiar polite style, which is by far the style you'll need most frequently. It's appropriate for adults, whether they are strangers or whether you know them a little. You'll need a different style to talk to close friends or children, and that's covered on page [42](#).

### **Aseyo?**

아세요?

Do you understand?

or

### **Ihaehaseyo?**

이해하세요?

Do you understand?

### **Ne.**

네.

Yes. (Often pronounced **ye** in the South.) **Ani.**

아니.

No. (Informal) **Aniyo.**

아니요.

No. (More polite) **Alayo.**

알아요.

I understand.

### **Mollayo.**

몰라요.

I don't understand.

### **Dasi mal hae juseyo.**

다시 말해 주세요.



Please say it again.

**Cheoncheon(h)i mal hae juseyo.**

천천히 말해 주세요.

Please say it slowly.

**Chaek-eul boseyo.**

책을 보세요.

Please look at your book.

**Chaek-eul boji maseyo.**

책을 보지 마세요.

Please don't look at your book.

**Hangungmal-lo haseyo.**

한국말로 하세요.

Please talk in Korean.

**Yeongeoro mal haji maseyo.**

영어로 말하지 마세요.

Please don't talk in English.

**Gachi halkkayo?**

같이 할까요?

Let's do it (say it) together.

**Da gachi.**

다 같이.

All together.

**Deutgi-man haseyo.**

듣기만 하세요.

Just listen please.

**Geureoseyo?**

그러세요?

Is that so? Oh? Really?

(Or, the more casual expression:) **Geurae(yo)?**

그래(요)?

Is it? Is that so? Oh, really?

**Geureyo.**

그래요.

That's so. Yes. That's it. (Same as above, but with different intonation).

**Geureochiman....**

그렇지만....

But.... However....

**Geurigo....**

그리고....

And (in addition)....

**Geuraeseo....**

그래서....

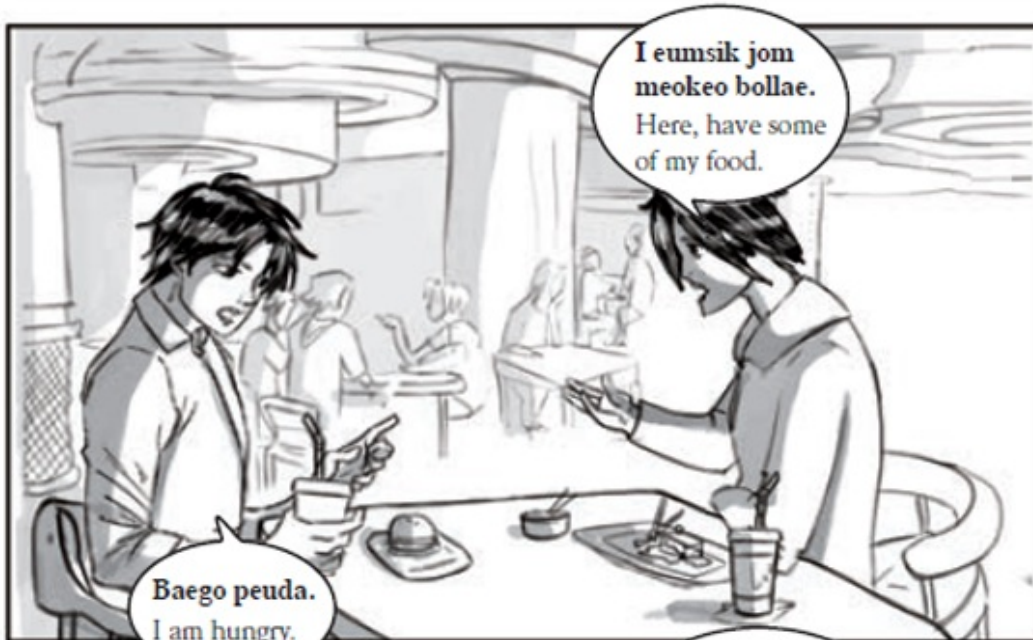
And so.... So....

**....gatta jusipsio.**

갖다 주십시오.

Please bring me....





**Baego peuda.**  
I am hungry.

**I eumsik jom meokeo bollae.**  
Here, have some of my food.



**Jogeeum deo jura.**  
Please give me a little more.

**Jeongmal baega gopat guna!**  
You must be really hungry!



**Jeongmal iji, jal meogeotda!**  
Thank you for saving me!

## LESSON 7

# More Useful Expressions **Ppalli gaseyo.**

빨리 가세요.  
Please go fast.

### **Cheoncheon(h)i gaseyo.**

천천히 가세요.  
Please go slow.

### **Oreunjjok-euro.**

오른쪽으로.  
To the right.

### **Oenjjok-euro.**

왼쪽으로.  
To the left.

### **Gojjang ap-euro.**

곧장 앞으로.  
Straight ahead.

### **Yeogi.**

여기.  
Here (near me or us). This place.

### **Jeogi.**

저기.  
Over there (away from you and me). That place over there.

### **Iri-ro.**

이리로.  
This way.

**Geuri-ro.**  
그리로.  
That way.

**Jeori-ro.**  
저리로.  
That way over there.

**Iri-ro osipsio.**  
이리로 오십시오.  
Please come this way.

**Igeo(t).**  
이거 (이것)  
This (thing).

**Geugeo(t).**  
그것.  
That (thing).

**Jeogeo(t).**  
저거 (저것)  
That (thing) over there.

**Eodi?**  
어디?  
Where? What place?

**M(u)eo(t)?**  
뭐 뭣 무어 무엇?  
What? (Pronounced **mueot**, **mueo**, **meot**, or **meo**.) **Wae?**  
왜?

Why?

**Eonje?**

언제?

When?

**Jigeum.**

지금.

Now. (Also pronounced **Jikkeum.**) **Oneul.**

오늘.

Today.

**Naeil.**

내일.

Tomorrow.

**Eoje.**

어제.

Yesterday.

**I daeum-e.**

이 다음에.

Next (after this).

**Geu daeum-e.**

그 다음에.

Next (after that).

**Najung-e.**

나중에.

Later (after this).

**Geu hu-e.**

그 후에.

Later (after that).

**Geu jeon-e.**

그 전에.  
Before that.

**Beolsseo.**

벌써.  
Already.

**Ajik.**

아직.  
Not yet.

**Jogeum.**

조금.  
A little. (Also pronounced **Jjokkeum** and **Jjogeum**.) **Jom deo.**

좀 더.  
A little more. (Also pronounced **Jjom deo**.) **Deo mani.**

더 많이.  
More.

**Jogeumman juseyo.**

조금만 주세요.  
Give me a little please.

**Jogeum deo juseyo.**

조금 더 주세요.  
Please give me a little more.

**Jomcheoreom.**

좀처럼.  
Seldom.

**Jaju.**

자주.



Often.

**Neomu.**

너무.

Too much.

**Chungbun(h)i.**

충분히.

Enough.

**Mani.**

많이.

Lots.

**Da.**

다.

All.

**Jal.**

잘.

(1) Well. (2) Lots. (3) Often.

**Cham.**

참.

Really. Very. Quite.



**Mwo eyo?**  
What is (it)?

**Bihaenggi eyo.**  
It's an airplane.



**Geu saram, nugeyo?**  
Who is that person?

**Hakgyo seonsaengnim ieyo.**  
He is a school teacher.

**Geu seonsaeng nimeun jeongi seukuteo reul gatgo isseoyo. Meotjyeo!**  
He has an e-scooter. Cool!

## LESSON 8

# “Is” and “Has”

There are two verbs which translate the English word *is, am, are, be* in Korean: **isseoyo** 있어요 *exists, stays* and **ieyo** 이에요 *equals*. You use **ieyo** when you have a sentence which can be reduced to the formula  $A = B$ :  
A = B            A    B =

This IS a book.        **Igeon, chaek ieyo.** 이걸 책 이에요

Notice that the formula has to change in Korean because the verb always comes at the end. The verb expression **ieyo** is peculiar in that it always has something in front of it, with which it is linked in pronunciation. (Other verbs can make a complete sentence by themselves.) The vowel **i** is included in the “**eyo**” part when it follows a vowel so that you get **yeyo** 예요 instead of 이에요. Some people also drop the **이** altogether and just use **eyo** 예요. The examples below are written with **ieyo**, but all could also be written with **yeyo** 예요 instead.

**Geugeon japji eyo.**

그건 잡지에요.

That is a magazine.

**Gicha eyo.**

기차예요.

(It)'s a train.

**Mwo eyo?**

뭐예요?

What is (it)?

**Bihaenggi eyo.**

비행기예요.

It's an airplane.

**Nugu eyo?**

누구예요?

Who is it?

**Jeo eyo.**

저예요.

It's me.

**Geu saram, nugueyo?**

그 사람 누구예요?

Who is that person? Who is he?

**I saram, nae chingu eyo.**

이 사람 내 친구예요.

This person is my friend.

**Hakgyo seonsaengnim ieyo.**

학교 선생님이예요.

He's a school teacher.

**Hanguk (s)saram ieyo?**

한국 사람이예요?

Is he a Korean (person)?

**Aniyo. Miguk (s)saram ieyo.**

아니요. 미국 사람이예요.

No. He's an American (person).

**Yeogi eodi eyo?**

여기 어디예요?

Where is this place?

**Jeogi cheoldoyeok ieyo.**

저기 철도역 이에요.

(That place) over there is a railroad station.

**Gonghang-i, eodi eyo?**

공항이 어디예요?

Where (what place) is the airport?

**Jeogi eyo.**

저기에요.

It's (that place) over there.

Whenever *is* refers merely to EXISTENCE or to LOCATION rather than to IDENTIFICATION, you use **isseoyo**.

**Don(-i), isseoyo?**

돈(이) 있어요?

Is there any money?

**Eodi isseoyo?**

어디있어요?

Where is it?

**Jungguk (s)saram(-i), eodi isseoyo?**

중국 사람이 어디있어요?

Where's the Chinese (person)?

This is the ordinary way of saying *has* or *got*: I've got a cat. = There exists a cat.

**Goyangi-ga isseoyo.**

고양이가 있어요.

(Someone) has a cat. OR There is a cat.

**Gimssi, jadongcha(-ga) isseoyo?**

김씨 자동차(가) 있어요?

Do you have a car, Mr. Kim?

**Aniyo. Jajeongeoman isseoyo.**

아니요. 자전거만 있어요.

No, I have only a bicycle.

To say *does not have* or *hasn't got* you use the verb expression **eopseoyo**:

**Sigan(-i) eopseoyo.**

시간(이) 없어요.

There isn't time = I haven't any time.

**Don(-i) eopseoyo.**

돈(이) 없어요

I haven't any money.

**Sige(-ga) eopseoyo?**

시계(가) 없어요?

Haven't you got a watch (clock)?

**Ai(-ga) eopseoyo?**

아이(가) 없어요?

Don't you have any children?

## LESSON 9

**Styles of Speech** Each Korean sentence can be said in many different ways, depending on who is talking to whom. In America, even if you divide the people up into regular folks and snobs, you still talk much the same way to anyone. But a Korean uses different verb forms at the end of his or her sentence for different people he or she talks to. The system is quite complicated, and as a foreigner you won't be expected to get the hang of it right away.

There are actually seven different levels of politeness in Korean, but only five are used in modern speech, and only three of those are common. This book will only teach the five used in modern Korean speech.

(The other two are now taught only in advanced Korean classes and the student will never, ever need to know them, much less from a book for beginners.) In this book most of the sentences are in the POLITE or **yo** style, because this is the simplest to learn, and it is also the most generally useful. Some of the sentences, especially set greetings, are given in the FORMAL or **-seumnida** style.

Since you will hear a lot of the other styles, too, you had better know a little about them. In some of the styles there are different endings depending on whether your sentence is a STATEMENT, QUESTION, COMMAND or PROPOSITION. In others, particularly the polite style, people will often use the same ending for all these types of sentences, and the only ways to tell them apart are intonation and context.

There are many different verb endings that can be used with the polite style, but most are beyond the scope of this book.

In making a command or proposition, Koreans often use the formal style even though they would ordinarily be talking to the person in the polite style—it's like adding "*please*" in English. On the next page is a list of some of the endings characteristic of the various styles.

The use of these styles is somewhat like this. You use the *formal* style to persons of higher status than you, though most people switch to the polite style once they know each other a little bit. However, while you can eventually switch to the intimate style with people your age or younger once you're friends, you never switch to the intimate style with someone in a position of authority over you, no matter how long you've known them and also to other people in

formal situations. To strangers, you use the formal style until the ice is broken—after that, the polite style.

You use the *intimate* style (which is just the polite style with the polite particle **yo** dropped) with close friends and relatives who are younger or whom you know very well. Some people use this style with their parents (though some always keep using the polite style), but you would never, ever use it toward your grandparents.

You use the *plain* style in talking to children, and sometimes with close friends and relatives. You use the *quotation* style (which is almost identical with the plain) when you are quoting what someone has said; or when writing an article or book.

The familiar style is now somewhat archaic and only really used by older people. Don't worry too much about learning it. Most people nowadays use the intimate style with close friends, children, and relatives who are either very close or younger.

| STYLE     | STATEMENT | QUESTION                 | COMMAND   | PROPOSITION |
|-----------|-----------|--------------------------|-----------|-------------|
| Formal    | -seumnida | -seumnikka               |           |             |
|           | -eumnida  | -eumnikka                | -hasipsio | -hasipsida  |
|           | -mnida    | -mnikka                  | -sipsio   | -sipsida    |
| Plain     | -da       | -ni                      | -haera    | -haja       |
|           | -nhada    |                          |           |             |
| Quotation | AS ABOVE  | -neunya                  | -eura     | AS ABOVE    |
| Intimate  |           | -eo, -a, -e, -ae         |           |             |
| Polite    |           | -eoyo, -ayo, -eyo, -aeyo |           |             |

Speech styles are quite different from “honorifics,” discussed in Lesson 25.

See if you can identify the style of each of the following utterances just by their endings. Don't memorize the sentences: **Bi-ga wasseumnikka?**

비가 왔습니까?

Did it rain?

**Yeogi-seo Jungguk eumsik-eul meogeulsu isseoyo?**

여기서 중국음식을 먹을 수 있어요?



Can I eat (= be served) Chinese food here?

**Naeil olgeyo.**

내일 올게요.

I'll come back tomorrow.

**Bang-i eopseoyo?**

방이 없어요?

Haven't you a (vacant) room?

**Eonje onayo?**

언제 오나요?

When did you get here?

**Jamkkan shwipsida.**

잠깐 쉬시다.

Let's rest a minute.

**Yeogi anjara.**

여기 앉아라.

Sit here.

**Igeot boseyo.**

이것 보세요.

Look at this.

**Ppalli gaseyo.**

빨리 가세요

Please go fast.

**Jip-e oseyo.**

집에 오세요.

Come to (my) house.

**Mwo hani?**

뭐 하니?  
What are you doing?

**Gachi haja.**

같이 하자.  
Let's do it together.

**Jigeum moegeosseoyo.**

지금 먹었어요.  
I've just now eaten.

**Geu chaek-eul beolsseo ilgeosseoyo?**

그 책을 벌써 읽었어요?  
Have you already seen (or read) that book?

**Iri wa.**

이리와.  
Come this way.

**Pyeonghwa-ga olkkayo?**

평화가 올까요?  
Will peace come?

**Geu-neun gongbu-reul yeolsim(h)i handa.**

그는 공부를 열심히 한다.  
He studies hard.

**Geu goyangi-neun yeppeuda.**

그 고양이는 예쁘다.  
The cat is pretty.

**Neomu jakda.**

너무 작다.  
It's too small.

**Keumnikka?**

큘니까?

Is it large?

**Yeoboseyo.**

여보세요.

Hello. (when answering a phone call) **Yeoggiyo.**

여기요.

Look, excuse me... (Literally means, here)

## LESSON 10

# Some Handy Nouns

Korean nouns occur in three different types of construction: (1) Followed by a PARTICLE (Lessons 12, 13, 14) which shows the grammatical relationship of the noun to the rest of the sentence— whether it is the subject or object or place of the action.

### **Hakgyo-ga keoyo.**

학교가 커요.

The school is big.

### **Hakgyo-reul bwayo.**

학교를 봐요.

I see the school.

### **Hakgyo-eseo gongbu haeyo.**

학교에서 공부해요.

I study at school.

(2) Followed by the verb **ieyo equals**: is (Lesson 8) as the B part of the formula (A) = B.

**Geu geonmul hakgyo-ieyo.** That (building) is a school.

그 건물 학교예요.

(3) Before another noun or a noun phrase which it modifies (describes).

### **Hakgyo seonsaeng.**

학교 선생.

A school teacher.

A Korean noun like **chaek** = *book* means all of these: *a book, some books, any books, the books*. You usually have to tell from the context whether the noun is plural, definite, or whatnot. There is a plural indicator **deul** = *group* often added at the end of a noun or noun phrase, but you can't count. The plural **deul** (들) is almost always used when referring to a group of people (e.g. 그 사람들, **geu saramdeul**—it would be weird to just say 그 사람 **geu saram**, to mean more than one person). However, it is only sometimes used for other nouns, usually only when the speaker wants to clarify/emphasize that there are several of an object. **Chaek deul** means *books* but then so does **chaek** all by itself.

Here are some handy common nouns:

|                     |                              |       |
|---------------------|------------------------------|-------|
| <b>yeonpil</b>      | pencil                       | 연필    |
| <b>jongi</b>        | paper                        | 종이    |
| <b>sinmun</b>       | newspaper                    | 신문    |
| <b>dambae</b>       | cigarette                    | 담배    |
| <b>gabang</b>       | briefcase, suitcase, handbag | 가방    |
| <b>gongchaek</b>    | notebook                     | 공책    |
| <b>jip</b>          | house                        | 집     |
| <b>maejeom</b>      | stand, small shop            | 매점    |
| <b>sangjeom</b>     | store                        | 상점    |
| <b>jang, sijang</b> | market                       | 장, 시장 |
| <b>ucheguk</b>      | post office                  | 우체국   |
| <b>eumsikjeom</b>   | restaurant                   | 음식점   |
| <b>gongjang</b>     | factory                      | 공장    |
| <b>samusil</b>      | office                       | 사무실   |
| <b>sang</b>         | table                        | 상     |
| <b>chaeksang</b>    | desk                         | 책상    |
| <b>uija</b>         | chair                        | 의자    |
| <b>hwajangsil</b>   | toilet                       | 화장실   |
| <b>jumeoni</b>      | pocket                       | 주머니   |
| <b>bul</b>          | fire                         | 불     |
| <b>mul</b>          | water                        | 물     |

|                                   |             |         |
|-----------------------------------|-------------|---------|
| <b>sul</b>                        | liquor      | 술       |
| <b>binu</b>                       | soap        | 비누      |
| <b>sugeon</b>                     | towel       | 수건      |
| <b>utdori</b>                     | shirt       | 웃도리     |
| <b>baji</b>                       | trousers    | 바지      |
| <b>yangmal</b>                    | socks       | 양말      |
| <b>gudu</b>                       | dress shoes | 구두      |
| <b>sinbal</b>                     | shoes       | 신발      |
| <b>jaket, koteu</b>               | overcoat    | 자켓, 코트  |
| <b>moja</b>                       | hat         | 모자      |
| <b>keompyuteo</b>                 | computer    | 컴퓨터     |
| <b>hyudaepon /<br/>haendeupon</b> | cell phone  | 휴대폰/핸드폰 |
| <b>gonghang</b>                   | airport     | 공항      |
| <b>taeksi</b>                     | taxi        | 택시      |
| <b>hotel</b>                      | hotel       | 호텔      |
| <b>namja</b>                      | man, boy    | 남자      |
| <b>yoeja</b>                      | woman, girl | 여자      |
| <b>chima</b>                      | skirt       | 치마      |

LESSON 11

# More Handy Nouns

|                      |                   |       |
|----------------------|-------------------|-------|
| <b>Hanguk</b>        | Korea             | 한국    |
| <b>Bukhan</b>        | North Korea       | 북한    |
| <b>Namhan</b>        | South Korea       | 남한    |
| <b>Jungguk</b>       | China             | 중국    |
| <b>Leosia</b>        | Russia            | 러시아   |
| <b>Ilbon</b>         | Japan             | 일본    |
| <b>Miguk</b>         | America           | 미국    |
| <b>Dogil</b>         | Germany           | 독일    |
| <b>Kaenada</b>       | Canada            | 캐나다   |
| <b>Hoju</b>          | Australia         | 호주    |
| <b>Taeguk</b>        | Thailand          | 태국    |
| <b>Indo</b>          | India             | 인도    |
| <b>Yureop</b>        | Europe            | 유럽    |
| <b>Yeongguk</b>      | England           | 영국    |
| <b>Nyujillaendeu</b> | New Zealand       | 뉴질랜드  |
| <b>Singapol</b>      | Singapore         | 싱가폴   |
| <b>Malleijia</b>     | Malaysia          | 말레이시아 |
| <b>Dongnam-Asia</b>  | Southeast Asia    | 동남아시아 |
| <b>Daeman</b>        | Taiwan            | 대만    |
| <b>Beteunam</b>      | Vietnam           | 베트남   |
| <b>Peurangseu</b>    | France            | 프랑스   |
| <b>Italia</b>        | Italy             | 이탈리아  |
| <b>Asia</b>          | Asia              | 아시아   |
| <b>jeomwon</b>       | clerk (in store)  | 점원    |
| <b>sawon</b>         | clerk (in office) | 사원    |

**nampyeon**  
**an(h)ae**  
**buin**

husband  
(one's own wife)  
(someone else's wife)

남편  
아내  
부인



## LESSON 12

# Particles

A **PARTICLE** is a little word which shows the relationship between the word or phrase preceding it and the rest of the sentence. Some Korean particles are similar in function to English prepositions (*in, on, at, from, till, of*); others indicate grammatical relationships which English shows by word order—like subject and object.

In English it makes a difference whether we say *The cat eats the bird* or *The bird eats the cat*. In practice, the subject is almost always first, followed by the object and then the verb; however, things can be switched around freely to show emphasis, especially in longer sentences.

The order in which we put the two nouns is determined by **EMPHASIS** rather than by which one does the eating. In order to make it clear which is the **SUBJECT** (which one eats) and which is the **OBJECT** (which one gets eaten), Korean uses different particles: **Goyangi-ga sae-reul meogeoyo** and **Sae-reul goyangi-ga meogeoyo** both mean *The cat eats the bird*. **Sae-ga goyangi-reul meogeoyo** and also **Goyangi-reul sae-ga meogeoyo** both mean *The bird eats the cat*.

One characteristic of a particle is that you practically never pause in front of it—it's always linked with the preceding word.

There are **TWO-SHAPE** particles and **ONE-SHAPE** particles. The one-shape particles always look the same, regardless of the word they follow. The two-shape particles have different shapes depending on the shape of the preceding word.

In many cases, particles will have a single syllable after a noun, but after a consonant, an extra **eu** will be added first. See the last example below. This also happens very often with verb endings.

| MEANING OF PARTICLE | SHAPE AFTER CONSONANT | SHAPE AFTER VOWEL |
|---------------------|-----------------------|-------------------|
| subject             | <b>i</b>              | <b>ga</b>         |
| object              | <b>eul</b>            | <b>reul</b>       |

|                        |             |           |
|------------------------|-------------|-----------|
| “with, and”            | <b>gwa</b>  | <b>wa</b> |
| “or, and”              | <b>ina</b>  | <b>na</b> |
| “hey!, Oh!” (vocative) | <b>a</b>    | <b>ya</b> |
| through, to            | <b>euro</b> | <b>ro</b> |

Here are some examples with words of the preceding lessons:

| PARTICLE               | AFTER CONSONANT              | AFTER VOWEL               |
|------------------------|------------------------------|---------------------------|
| subject                | <b>ireum-i</b><br>이름이        | <b>dambae-ga</b><br>담배가   |
|                        | <b>bang-i</b><br>방이          | <b>nai-ga</b><br>나이가      |
|                        | <b>mul-i (mu-ri)</b><br>물이   | <b>binu-ga</b><br>비누가     |
| object                 | <b>yangmal-eul</b><br>양말을    | <b>gudu-reul</b><br>구두를   |
|                        | <b>sinmun-eul</b><br>신문을     | <b>jongi-reul</b><br>종이를  |
|                        | <b>sangjeom-eul</b><br>상점을   | <b>hakgyo-reul</b><br>학교를 |
| “with, and”            | <b>hyeong-gwa*</b><br>형과     | <b>na wa</b><br>나와        |
|                        | <b>gajok-gwa*</b><br>가족과     | <b>chingu-wa</b><br>친구와   |
|                        | <b>Iut-gwa*</b><br>이웃과       | <b>nongbu-wa</b><br>농부와   |
| “or, and, or the like” | <b>sugeon-ina</b><br>수건이나    | <b>baj-ina</b><br>바지나     |
| through, to            | <b>gonghang-euro</b><br>공항으로 | <b>hakkyo-ro</b><br>학교로   |
|                        | <b>jip-euro</b>              | <b>keompyuteoro</b>       |

|          |                       |                     |
|----------|-----------------------|---------------------|
| vocative | 집으로                   | 컴퓨터로                |
|          | <b>chaeksang-ina</b>  | <b>moja-na</b>      |
|          | 책상이나                  | 모자나                 |
|          | <b>Gim seonsaeng!</b> | <b>Gim moksa!</b>   |
|          | 김 선생                  | 김 목사                |
|          | (Oh, Mr. Kim!)        | (Oh, Reverend Kim!) |
|          | <b>Gildong a!</b>     | <b>Yeongsu ya!</b>  |
|          | 길동아                   | 영수야                 |
|          | (Hey, Poktong!)       | (Hey, Haksu!)       |

\* Don't forget **k** sounds like **g** between voiced sounds.

NOTE: Before the subject particle, the following nouns have different shapes:

|             |            |    |               |    |
|-------------|------------|----|---------------|----|
| <b>na</b>   | I          | 나  | <b>nae-ga</b> | 내가 |
| <b>jeo</b>  | I (formal) | 저  | <b>je-ga</b>  | 제가 |
| <b>nugu</b> | who        | 누구 | <b>nu-ga</b>  | 누가 |

## LESSON 13

# More Particles

Here are some one-shape particles, with examples after both consonants and vowels:

| PARTICLE                              | MEANINGS                         | EXAMPLES                                                                                                                                              |
|---------------------------------------|----------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>ui</b> (PRO-<br>NOUNCED <b>e</b> ) | modification or<br>subordination | <b>Gim-ssi-chaek ieyo.</b><br>김씨의 책이에요<br>It's Mr. Kim's book.<br><b>Nugu-ui moja eyo?</b><br>누구의 모자예요?<br>Whose hat is it?                           |
| <b>e</b>                              | (1) direction <i>to</i>          | <b>Geu-neun hakgyo-e gamnida.</b><br>그는 학교에 갑니다<br>He goes to school.<br><b>Geu-neun eun(h)aeng-e gamnida.</b><br>그는 은행에 갑니다.<br>He goes to the bank. |
|                                       | (2) location <i>at, in</i>       | <b>Geu-neun hakgyo-e isseoyo.</b><br>그는 학교에 있어요.<br>He is in school.<br><b>Geu-neun eun(h)aeng-e isseoyo.</b><br>그는 은행에 있어요.<br>He's at the bank.     |
|                                       | (3) a point in                   | <b>Han si-e ol geyo.</b>                                                                                                                              |

time *at, in*

한 시에 올게요.

I'm coming at one o'clock.

**Ojeon-e ol geyo.**

오전에 올게요.

I'm coming in the morning.

(4) impersonal  
indirect object

**Geu reul eun(h)aeng-e bonael  
geoyo.**

그를 은행에 보낼게요.

I'm sending (him, it) to the bank.

**Hoesa-e emeileul sseugo isseoyo.**

회사에 이메일을 쓰고 있어요.

I'm writing an email to the company.

**hante**

personal  
indirect object  
*to, at, for*  
(a person)

**Pumonim-gge bonael geoyo.**

부모님께 보낼꺼예요.

I'm sending it to (my) parents.

**Chingu-hante emeileul sseugo  
isseoyo.**

친구한테 이메일을 쓰고 있어요.

I'm writing an email to the company.

**ege**

SAME; less  
colloquial

**Biseo-ege jul geyo.**

비서에게 줄게요.

I'm giving it to the secretary.

**bogo**

SAME; more  
colloquial

**Nugu-bogo mal hae yo?**

누구보고 말해요?

Who are you telling (to)?

**Gim-ssi-bogo iri ora haseyo.**

김씨-보고 이리 오라 하세요.

Tell Mr. Kim to come here.



I usaneun nugu geosijyo?  
Whose umbrella is this?

Hanssi-eui geosinde. I usaneul geu buneui unjeon gisaeye gatda jusigess seumnikka?  
This is Mr. Han's umbrella. Can you pass this to his driver?



Choessi-ege yeogi hoe-eui-e chamseok harago jeonhae juseyo.  
Tell Mr. Choi to come here for a meeting.

Ye, algess seumnida.  
Yes, sure.



Myeot si-innikka?  
What time is it?

Ohu 7si-innida.  
7:00 tonight.

| PARTICLE         | MEANINGS                                           | EXAMPLES                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|------------------|----------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>seo, eseo</b> | (1) dynamic<br>location<br>(happens) <i>at, in</i> | <p><b>Hakkyo-eseo yeongeo-reul baewosseoyo.</b><br/>학교에서 영어 배웠어요.<br/>I learned English at school.</p> <p><b>Seoul-eseo taeonasseoyo.</b><br/>서울에서 태어났어요.<br/>I was born in Seoul.</p>           |
|                  | (2) <i>from</i> (a place)                          | <p><b>Yeogi-seo meoreoyo.</b><br/>여기서 멀어요.<br/>It's far from here.</p> <p><b>Ucheguk-eseo oreunjjok-euro doragaseyo.</b><br/>우체국에서 오른쪽으로 돌아가세요.<br/>From the post office, turn to the right.</p> |
| <b>egeseo</b>    | <i>from</i> (a person)                             | <p><b>Nugu-e ke seo deuresseoyo.</b><br/>누구에게서 들었어요.<br/>I heard it from someone.</p>                                                                                                            |
| <b>buteo</b>     | <i>from</i> (a time<br>or place)                   | <p><b>Yeogi-buteo sijak hapsida.</b><br/>여기부터 시작합니다.<br/>Let's start from here.</p> <p><b>Achim-buteo bam-kkaji ilman hannida.</b><br/>아침부터 밤까지 일합니다.<br/>I work from morning till night.</p>    |
| <b>kkaji</b>     | (all the way up) <i>to</i><br>(a place or time)    | <p><b>Han si-kkaji oseyo.</b><br/>한 시까지 오세요.</p>                                                                                                                                                 |

Come by 1 o'clock.

**Yeogi-kkaji hapsida.**

여기까지 합시다.

Let's stop here.

**hago**

*with, and* (MORE  
COLLOQUIAL THAN  
**wa/gwa**)

**Chaek-hago yeonpil kkeonaeseoyo.**

책하고 연필 꺼내세요.

Take out a book and a pencil.

**Chingu-hago gayo.**

친구하고 가요.

I'm going (together) with a friend.

**man**

*just, only*

**Yeonpil-man isseoyo.**

연필만 있어요.

I've only got a pencil.

**Chingu-man mannayo.**

친구만 만나요.

I'm only seeing my friend.

**gachi**

*like*

**Agi-gachi malhaeyo.**

아기 같이 말해요.

He speaks like a baby.

**Nabi-kachi chumchwoyo.**

나비같이 춤춰요

She dances like a butterfly.

**bak-ke**

(or

**bakke)**

*outside of, except  
for, aside from,  
or (anything) but*

**Jip-bak-e eopseoyo.**

집 밖에 없어요.

I haven't but my house. = I have  
only my house.

(**Jip-man iseoyo.** 집만 있어요.)

**Gim moksa-bakke amudo**

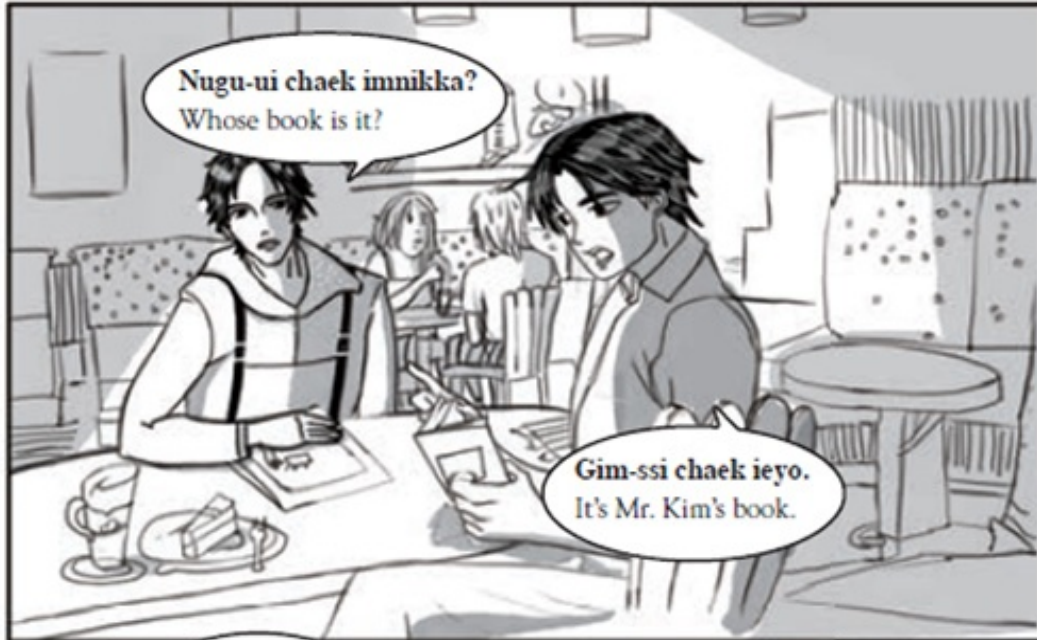
**an wasseoyo.**



김목사 밖에 아무도 안 왔어요.  
(They) didn't come but Rev. Kim =  
Only Rev. Kim came.

**(Kim moksa-man wasseoyo.**  
김목사 만 왔어요.)





## LESSON 14

# Some Tricky Particles

The 2-shape particle **euro/ro** has the shape **ro** after vowels, and **euro** after all consonants except **l**; after **l** the shape is **lo: gi ch'aro, bareun pyeoneureo, oen pyeoneureo**.

The meanings of the particle are as follows:

- |                                    |                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| (1) Manner<br><i>as</i>            | <b>Hoewoneu-ro gaiphaeseoyo.</b><br>회원으로 가입했어요.<br>I signed in as a member.                                                                                                        |
| (2) Function<br><i>as</i>          | <b>Hanguk-e haksang-euro wasseoyo.</b><br>한국에 학생으로 왔어요.<br>I come to Korea as a student.                                                                                           |
| (3) State<br><i>is; and</i>        | <b>Jeo sonyeoneun Gim seonsaengui ttal-lo Busaneseo salgo iseoyo.</b><br>저 소녀는 김 선생의 딸로 부산에서 살고 있어요.<br>That girl is Mr. Kim's daughter and is living in Pusan.                    |
| (4) Direction<br><i>toward; to</i> | <b>Oenjjok-euro gaseyo.</b><br>왼쪽으로 가세요<br>Go to the left.                                                                                                                         |
| (5) Means<br><i>with, by</i>       | <b>Na-neun yeonpil-lo pyeonji-reul sseoyo.</b><br>나는 연필로 편지를 써요.<br>I'm writing this letter with a pencil.<br><b>Bihaenggi-ro wasseoyo?</b><br>비행기로 왔어요?<br>Did you come by plane? |

The 2-shape particle **eun/neun** has the shape **eun** after consonants, **neun** after vowels. For example: **jip-eun, hakgyo-neun**. The tricky thing about this particle is its meaning and use. As a tag translation you can try *as for*: as a tag meaning you can think of it as the TOPIC indicator.

What this particle does is take something and set it aside as a sort of stage-setting, as if to say—at the very beginning of your sentence—“Now this is what we’re going to talk about.” The word or phrase in front of it refers to the least unknown ingredient in your communication—the part you’d be most likely to drop if you were going to send a postcard. For this reason, the phrase with this particle nearly always comes at the very beginning of the sentence. (Sometimes it is preceded by an adverb put out of place at the beginning for a kind of special emphasis.) In Lesson 5 you learned that, depending on the situation, the dispensable part of your news—what the other person probably knows already—may be the subject, the object, the place, the time, or anything EXCEPT THE VERB EXPRESSION.

So, if you want to take out any of the phrases in front of the verb and put them at the beginning in order to *lessen the emphasis on them*, you can then add the particle **eun/neun** to still further *cut down their emphasis*. When you do this to the subject or object, the ordinary particles (**i/ga** or **eul/reul**) do not occur.

For any other phrases, you can add the topic particle right after whatever particle would ordinarily be there. Let’s take an example: **Geu haksang-i jigeum hakgyo-eseo Hangungmal-eul gongbu haeyo**. *That student is now studying Korean at school*. With differences of emphasis, this can be said in any of these ways: **Geu haksang-eun jigeum hakgyo-eseo Hangungmal-eul gongbu haeyo**.

그 학생은 지금 학교에서 한국말을 공부해요.

**Jigeum geu haksang-i hakgyo-eseo Hangungmal-eul gongbu haeyo.**

지금 그 학생이 학교에서 한국말을 공부해요.

**Hakgyo-eseo geu haksang-i jigeum Hangungmal-eul gongbu haeyo.**

학교에서 그 학생이 지금 한국말을 공부해요.

**Hangungmal-eul geu haksang-i jigeum hakgyo-eseo gongbu haeyo.**

한국말을 그 학생이 지금 학교에서 공부해요.

But just how do you use this emphasis? It is used, for one thing, when you are making different statements about two different subjects or objects in order to play up their points of CONTRAST: **Hotel-eun boineunde cheolttoyeok-i an**

**boyeoyo.**

호텔은 보이는데 철도역이 안보여요.

The hotel I see. But I can't see the railroad station.

When you first mention a subject, you usually use the subject particle. But if you keep on talking about the same thing, you either repeat the subject (in the same or slightly different words) with the topic particle, or you just don't mention it:

**Nae chingu-neun Miguk-eseo wasseoyo. (Geu-neun) Miguk saram ieyo. (Geu saram-eun) gunin-euro Hanguk-e wasseoyo. (Geu saram-eun) yukgun janggyo eyo. (Geu saram-eun) Seoul-eseo salgo isseoyo.**

내 친구는 미국에서 왔어요. 그는 미국 사람이에요. 군인으로 한 국에 왔어요. 그는 육군 장교예요. 그는 서울에서 살고 있어요.

My friend came from America. He is an American. He came to Korea as a serviceman. He's an army officer. He's living in Seoul.

The one-shape particle **do** is a kind of opposite; it has the meaning *too, also, indeed, even*. This particle reinforces the emphasis on the preceding word with reference either to some other part of the sentence or to something outside the sentence: **Geu haksaeng-do yojeueum hakgyo-eseo Hangukmal-eul gongbu hago isseoyo.**

그 학생도 요즈음 학교에서 한국말을 공부하고 있어요.

That student is studying Korean in school now too (as well as someone else). OR Even that student (to my surprise)....

**Geu haksaeng-i jigeum hakgyo-eseo Hangukmal-do gongbu hago isseoyo.**

그 학생이 지금 학교에서 한국말도 공부하고 있어요.

That student is now studying Korean at school too (as well as at home or somewhere else). That student is studying Korean at school now too (as well as other subjects).

Notice that the English words *too* and *also* are ambiguous in reference wherever you put them in the sentence, but the Korean particle **do** always refers to the word preceding it. Notice also that the subject and object particles are not used when you use **do** (just as they are not with the topic particle).

Since the particle **do** reinforces the emphasis, we might expect the phrase with which it occurs to be moved over near the end of the sentence, and this

sometimes happens, but it seems to be unnecessary since the particle itself lends all the emphasis needed.

Now notice the translation of the following sentences: **Bap-do meokgo ppang-do meogeoyo.**

밥도 먹고 빵도 먹어요.

Or: **Bap-do ppang-do da meogeoyo.**

밥도 빵도 다 먹어요.

I eat both rice and bread.

**Achim-edo ilhago bam-edo ilhaeyo.**

아침에도 일하고 밤에도 일해요.

Or: **Achim-edo bam-edo da ilhaeyo.**

아침에도 밤에도 다 일해요.

I work both in the mornings and in the evenings.

**Yeonpil-do sago pen-do saseoyo.**

연필도 사고 펜도 샀어요.

I bought both a pencil and a pen.

**Migug-eseodo ogo ilbon-eseodo wasseoyo.**

미국에서도 오고 일본에서도 왔어요.

They came from both America and Japan.

**Jip-do itgo cha-do iseoyo.**

집도 있고 차도 있어요.

Or: **Jip-do cha-do da iseoyo.**

집도 차도 다 있어요.

I have both a house and a car.

**Gim seonsaeng-do, Ma seonsaeng-do, Jang seonsaeng-do mannasseyo.**

김 선생도, 마 선생도, 장 선생도 만났어요.

I saw Mr. Kim, and Mr. Ma, and Mr. Chang, all three.

When you have **do** after each of two affirmative phrases, the translation is

*both... and...* If there are more than two phrases, the translation comes out *and..., and ..., and ..., all 3 (or 4, or 5)*.

Now look at some negative sentences: **Achim-edo bam-edo il haji anayo.**

아침에도 밤에도 일하지 않아요.

I work neither in the morning nor at night.

**Jip-do cha-do eopseoyo.**

집도 차도 없어요.

I haven't got either a house or a car.

**Gim seonsaeng-do, Ma seonsaeng-do, Jang seonsaeng-do manaji anasseoyo.**

김 선생도 마 선생도 장 선생도 만나지 않았어요.

I haven't met neither Mr. Kim, nor Mr. Ma, nor Mr. Chang.

The translation is *neither... nor...* or *not either... or....*





Doneul sewo bopsida.  
Cheonwon, icheonwon...  
sipcheonwon.

Let me count my money.  
1,000, 2,000 ... 10,000  
won (made a mistake  
with 10,000)

Hanguk malloneun  
"sipcheon" i anin "man"  
euro malhaeya haeyo.  
You should say "man"  
not "sip cheon."

Mwoga dareungayo?  
What's the difference?



Oke-i, oneuleun saeroun  
geoseul baewoss seumnida.  
Gamsa hamnida!  
OK, I learned something  
new today. Thanks!

Hanguk mallo 10,000eun  
manirago malhago, sipcheon  
irago haji anhayo. Urineun  
chungguk sikeuro maneuro  
gyesan hamnida.  
In Korean, the amount is "man"  
for 10,000 – not "sip cheon."  
We follow the Chinese way of  
counting ten thousands.



## LESSON 15

# Numerals

The Koreans have two sets of numerals; one of these they borrowed from the Chinese. Up to 99, both sets are used—for 100 and above you use only the Chinese set. The numerals above 10 are usually in combinations of the first ten numerals: 11 is 10-1, 12 is 10-2, 20 (in the Chinese system) is 2-10. (In fact, it's very rare to hear the pure Korean numbers over 10 used at all, except to refer to ages.) But there are a number of sound changes involved. Some of the native Korean numerals have two shapes: the shortened shape is used only when the numeral is right in front of the word with which you are counting. For example **hana** means *one* but *one o'clock* is **han si** and *one person* is **han saram**:

| MEANING | NATIVE NUMERALS |                      | CHINESE NUMERAL |
|---------|-----------------|----------------------|-----------------|
|         | (ordinary)      | (shortened)          |                 |
| 1       | <b>hana</b> 하나  | <b>han</b> 한         | <b>il</b> 일     |
| 2       | <b>dul</b> 둘    | <b>du</b> 두          | <b>i</b> 이      |
| 3       | <b>set</b> 셋    | <b>se</b> 세          | <b>sam</b> 삼    |
| 4       | <b>net</b> 넷    | <b>ne</b> 네          | <b>sa</b> 사     |
| 5       |                 | <b>daseot</b> 다섯     | <b>o</b> 오      |
| 6       |                 | <b>yeoseot</b> 여섯    | <b>yuk</b> 육    |
| 7       |                 | <b>ilgop</b> 일곱      | <b>chil</b> 칠   |
| 8       |                 | <b>yeodeol(p)</b> 여덟 | <b>pal</b> 팔    |
| 9       |                 | <b>ahop</b> 아홉       | <b>gu</b> 구     |
| 10      |                 |                      |                 |

|    | <b>yeol 열</b>                 |                               | <b>sip 십</b>                            |
|----|-------------------------------|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| 11 | <b>yeol hana</b> 열하나          | <b>yeol han</b> 열한            | <b>sip il</b> 십일                        |
| 12 | <b>yeol dul</b> 열둘            | <b>yeol du</b> 열두             | <b>sip i</b> 십이                         |
| 13 | <b>yeol set</b> 열셋            | <b>yeol se</b> 열세             | <b>sip sam</b> 십삼                       |
| 14 | <b>yeol net</b> 열넷            | <b>yeol ne</b> 열네             | <b>sip sa</b> 십사                        |
| 15 | <b>yeol daseot</b> 열다섯        |                               | <b>sip o</b> 십오                         |
| 16 | <b>yeol yeoseot</b> 열여섯       |                               | <b>sim nyuk</b> 십육                      |
| 17 | <b>yeol ilgop</b> 열일곱         |                               | <b>sip chil</b> 십칠                      |
| 18 | <b>yeol yeodeol</b> 열여덟       |                               | <b>sip pal</b> 십팔                       |
| 19 | <b>yeol ahop</b> 열아홉          |                               | <b>sip ku</b> 십구                        |
| 20 | <b>seumul</b> 스물              |                               | <b>isip</b> 이십                          |
| 21 | <b>seumul hana</b>            | <b>seumul han</b><br>스물하나(한)  | <b>isip il</b> 이십일                      |
| 22 | <b>seumul dul</b>             | <b>seumul du</b><br>스물둘(두)    | <b>isip i</b> 이십이                       |
| 23 | <b>seumul (s)set</b>          | <b>seumul (s)se</b><br>스물셋(세) | <b>isip sam</b> 이십삼                     |
| 24 | <b>seumul net</b>             | <b>seumul ne</b><br>스물넷(네)    | <b>isip sa</b> 이십사                      |
| 25 | <b>seumul dasot</b> 스물다섯      |                               | <b>isip o</b> 이십오                       |
| 26 | <b>seumul yeoseot</b> 스물여섯    |                               | <b>isip yuk (i-sim-nyuk)</b><br><br>이십육 |
| 27 | <b>seumul ilgop</b> 스물일곱      |                               | <b>isip chil</b> 이십칠                    |
| 28 | <b>seumul yeodeol(p)</b> 스물여덟 |                               | <b>isip pal</b> 이십팔                     |

|     |                         |                            |
|-----|-------------------------|----------------------------|
| 29  | <b>seumul ahop</b> 스물아홉 | <b>isip ku</b> 이십구         |
| 30  | <b>seoreun</b> 서른       | <b>samsip</b> 삼십           |
| 40  | <b>maheun</b> 마흔        | <b>sasip</b> 사십            |
| 50  | <b>swin</b> 쉰           | <b>osip</b> 오십             |
| 60  | <b>yesun</b> 예순         | <b>yuksip</b> 육십           |
| 70  | <b>ilheun</b> 일흔        | <b>chil(s)sip</b> 칠십       |
| 80  | <b>yeodeun</b> 여든       | <b>pal(s)sip</b> 팔십        |
| 90  | <b>aheun</b> 아흔         | <b>gusip</b> 구십            |
| 100 | —                       | <b>baek; il baek</b> 백, 일백 |
| 200 |                         | <b>i baek</b> 이백           |
| 300 |                         | <b>sam baek</b> 삼백         |

| MEANING | NATIVE NUMERALS | CHINESE NUMERAL             |
|---------|-----------------|-----------------------------|
| 400     |                 | <b>sa baek</b> 사백           |
| 500     |                 | <b>o baek</b> 오백            |
| 600     |                 | <b>yuk baek</b> 육백          |
| 700     |                 | <b>chil baek</b> 칠백         |
| 800     |                 | <b>pal baek</b> 팔백          |
| 900     |                 | <b>gu baek</b> 구백           |
| 1000    |                 | <b>cheon; ilcheon</b> 천, 일천 |
| 2000    |                 | <b>i cheon</b> 이천           |
| 3000    |                 | <b>sam cheon</b> 삼천         |
| 4000    |                 | <b>sa cheon</b> 사천          |
| 5000    |                 | <b>o cheon</b> 오천           |
| 6000    |                 | <b>yuk cheon</b> 육천         |

|           |                          |
|-----------|--------------------------|
| 7000      | <b>chil cheon</b> 칠천     |
| 8000      | <b>pal cheon</b> 팔천      |
| 9000      | <b>gu cheon</b> 구천       |
| 10,000    | <b>man; il man</b> 만, 일만 |
| 20,000    | <b>i man</b> 이만          |
| 30,000    | <b>sam man</b> 삼만        |
| 100,000   | <b>sim man</b> 십만        |
| 1,000,000 | <b>baek man</b> 백만       |

## LESSON 16

**Nouns Ending in -t** In Lesson 3, we learned that only the consonants **p, t, k, m, n, ng,** and **l** occur before a pause or another consonant. But some words have basic forms that end in other sounds, and these have to change before a pause or a consonant. When you hear a noun ending in **t** you are not sure whether the basic form of the noun ends in **d, s, j, ch,** or **t**.

As it happens, nearly all these nouns have basic forms that end in **s**, so we can consider the others as individual exceptions and make a rule: a noun which you hear with a final **t**, has a final **s** when it is linked with a particle beginning with a vowel, or when it is linked with the verb **ieyo** “is.” Here are some examples:

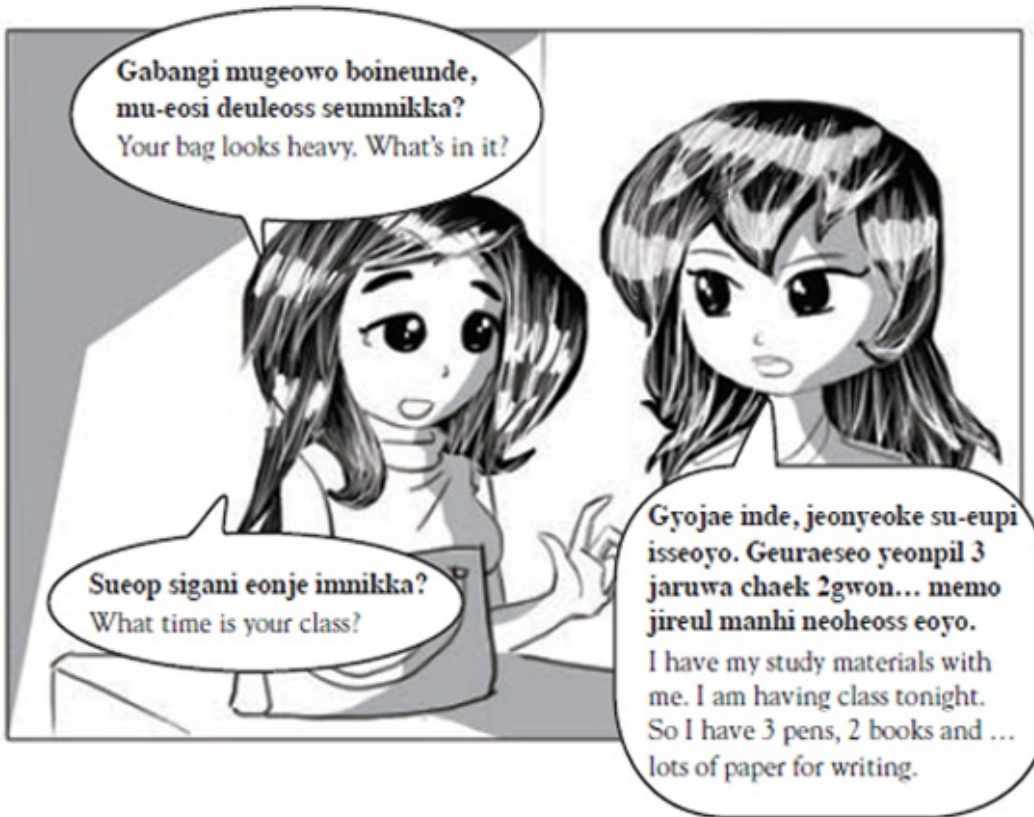
| MEANING | NOUN                 | PARTICLE                | IEYO                         |
|---------|----------------------|-------------------------|------------------------------|
| thing   | <b>geot</b><br>것     | <b>geos-i</b><br>것이     | <b>geos ieyo</b><br>것이에요     |
| place   | <b>got</b><br>곳      | <b>gos-i</b><br>곳이      | <b>gos ieyo</b><br>곳이에요      |
| what?   | <b>mueot?</b><br>무엇? | <b>mueos-i?</b><br>무엇이? | <b>mueos ieyo?</b><br>무엇이에요? |
| clothes | <b>ot</b><br>옷       | <b>os-eun</b><br>옷은     | <b>os ieyo</b><br>옷이에요       |
| three   | <b>set</b><br>셋      | <b>ses-i</b><br>셋이      | <b>ses ieyo</b><br>셋이에요      |
| four    | <b>net</b>           | <b>nes-eul</b>          | <b>nes ieyo</b>              |

|      |                      |                          |                              |
|------|----------------------|--------------------------|------------------------------|
|      | 넷                    | 넷을                       | 넷이에요                         |
| five | <b>daseot</b><br>다섯  | <b>daseos-eul</b><br>다섯을 | <b>daseos ieyo</b><br>다섯이에요  |
| six  | <b>yeoseot</b><br>여섯 | <b>yeoseos-i</b><br>여섯이  | <b>yeoseos ieyo</b><br>여섯이에요 |

The individual exceptions are regularized by many Koreans so that you may hear both forms:

|           |                  |                                                 |                                                    |
|-----------|------------------|-------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|
| flower    | <b>kkot</b> 꽃    | <b>kkoch-i</b> 꽃이<br><b>kkos-i</b>              | <b>kkoch ieyo</b><br>꽃이에요<br><b>kkos ieyo</b>      |
| how many? | <b>myeot?</b> 몇? | <b>myeoch ina?</b><br>몇이나?<br><b>myeos ina?</b> | <b>myeoch ieyo?</b><br>몇이에요?<br><b>myeos ieyo?</b> |
| daytime   | <b>nat</b> 낮     | <b>naj-e</b> 낮에                                 | <b>nach ieyo</b><br>낮이에요<br><b>naj ieyo</b>        |
| dry field | <b>bat</b> 밭     | <b>bat-e</b> 밭에<br><b>bas-e</b>                 | <b>bat ieyo</b><br>밭이에요<br><b>bas ieyo</b>         |





## LESSON 17

# Counting Things

In English we can say either *two steers* or *two head of cattle*. In the same way, Koreans say either **so dul** = *two cows*, though this is used very infrequently and it's much more common to hear the second form, **so du mari** or **so du mari** = *two head of cattle*. But expressions like *two HEAD of cattle, four SHEETS of paper, a CONTAINER of milk, three PIECES of candy, six ITEMS of laundry* are much more common in Korean. The words in capital letters can be called CLASSIFIERS—they tell you something about the shape or looks of the thing you're counting. Or sometimes they tell you the unit by which you are measuring the thing: *three CUPS of sugar, two TABLESPOONFULS of sugar, one POUND of sugar*. Most Korean classifiers are used with the native set of numerals, but a few common ones are used with the Chinese set. Here are some useful classifiers: USED WITH KOREAN NUMERALS

|              |    |                          |
|--------------|----|--------------------------|
| <b>si</b>    | 시  | o'clock                  |
| <b>sigan</b> | 시간 | hours                    |
| <b>*dal</b>  | 달  | months                   |
| <b>sal</b>   | 살  | years old                |
| <b>saram</b> | 사람 | people                   |
| <b>bun</b>   | 분  | people (polite)          |
| <b>gwon</b>  | 권  | bound volumes            |
| <b>mari</b>  | 마리 | animals, fish            |
| <b>beon</b>  | 번  | times                    |
| <b>*jang</b> | 장  | flat objects, newspapers |
| <b>*jan</b>  | 잔  | cupfuls                  |
| <b>chae</b>  | 채  | buildings                |
| <b>dae</b>   | 대  | vehicles, machines       |
| <b>gae</b>   | 개  | items, units, objects    |

The starred (\*) items count *three* and *four* with the special shapes **seok** and **neok** instead of **se** and **ne**:

|                  |     |                          |
|------------------|-----|--------------------------|
| <b>seok dal</b>  | 석 달 | <i>three months</i>      |
| <b>neok jang</b> | 넉 장 | <i>four flat objects</i> |

USED WITH CHINESE NUMERALS

|                   |      |                      |
|-------------------|------|----------------------|
| <b>bun</b>        | 분    | minutes              |
| <b>(n)yeon</b>    | 년, 연 | years                |
| <b>cheung</b>     | 층    | floor (of buildings) |
| <b>(l)i, (n)i</b> | 리    | miles, <i>li</i>     |
| <b>won</b>        | 원    | won (currency)       |

Notice that **i bun** means *two minutes* but **du bun** means *two honored persons*.

When you are using a noun, a particle and a number expression (a numeral plus a classifier, or a numeral all by itself), there are three possible ways to phrase your sentence, though the first is more common than the second and you will not ever hear the second form with units of time.

|                               |            |
|-------------------------------|------------|
| <b>Chaek du gwon isseoyo.</b> | 책 두 권 있어요. |
| <b>Chaek-i dul isseoyo.</b>   | 책이 둘 있어요.  |

These all mean *I have two books*. You can say the same thing with a classifier: **Du gwon-ui chaek-i isseoyo. Chaek du gwon-i isseoyo. Chaek-i du gwon isseoyo.**

Here are some examples of number expressions in sentences: **Sinmun-eul du jang sasseoyo.**

신문을 두 장 샀어요.  
I bought two newspapers.

**Achim-mada sinmun-eul myeot jang-ina saseyo?**

아침마다 신문을 몇 장이나 사세요?  
How many newspapers do you buy each morning?

**Jadongcha han dae-man isseoyo.**

자동차 한 대만 있어요.

We have only one automobile.

**Han pun-do eopseoyo.**

한 푼도 없어요.

I haven't a cent.

**Gyeongchal se myeong-eul bwasseoyo.**

경찰 세 명을 봤어요.

I saw three policemen.

**I chaek-eul du beon ilgeosseoyo.**

이 책을 두 번 읽었어요.

I read this book twice.

**Geu yeongwha-reul se beon bwasseoyo.**

그 영화를 세 번 봤어요.

I saw that movie three times.

**Jeomwon-ege i cheon won jueosseoyo.**

점원에게 이천원 주었어요.

I gave the clerk 2000 won.

**I bilding myeot cheung-ina isseoyo?**

이 빌딩 몇 층이나 있어요?

How many stories does this building have?

**O-seun i cheung-eseo parayo.**

옷은 이층에서 팔아요.

They sell clothes on the second floor.

**Hanguk-e onji beolsseo sam nyeon jjae eyo.**

한국에 온 지 벌써 삼년째예요.

I am (= have been) in Korea already three years (long).

**Il nyeon dwi-e Miguk-euro doragayo.**

일년 뒤에 미국으로 돌아가요.  
I go back (return) to America after a year.

**I nyeon jeon-e Busan-eseo salgo isseosseoyo.**

이년 전에 부산에서 살고 있었어요.  
Two years ago (before) I was living in Pusan.

**Ttal-i myeot sal ieyo?**

딸이 몇 살이에요?  
How old is your daughter?

**Yeol yeodeol sal ieyo.**

열여덟 살이에요.  
She's 18.

**Jeoneun maheun sal ieyo. An(h)ae-neun seoreun ahop sal ieyo.**

저는 마흔 살이에요. 아내는 서른 아홉 살이에요.  
I'm 40. My wife is 39.

## LESSON 18

**Telling Time** To say what time it is, you use the Korean numerals followed by **si** = *o'clock*:

|               |             |     |
|---------------|-------------|-----|
| <b>han si</b> | one o'clock | 한 시 |
| <b>du si</b>  | two o'clock | 두 시 |

To say *half-past* you add the word **pan** = *and a half* at the end of the expression:

|                  |      |       |
|------------------|------|-------|
| <b>du si ban</b> | 2:30 | 두 시 반 |
|------------------|------|-------|

To say *and so-many minutes* you use the Chinese numerals and the noun **bun** = *minutes*:

|                        |      |          |
|------------------------|------|----------|
| <b>se si sip o bun</b> | 3:15 | 세 시 십오 분 |
|------------------------|------|----------|

If you want to specify a.m. and p.m. you put the words **ojeon** = *before noon* and **ohu** = *afternoon* in front of the time expression:

|                            |           |             |
|----------------------------|-----------|-------------|
| <b>ojeon ahop si ban</b>   | 9:30 a.m. | 오전 아홉 시 반   |
| <b>ohu ne si sasip bun</b> | 4:40 p.m. | 오후 네 시 사십 분 |

To say *so-and-so-many HOURS* you use the Korean numerals and the noun **sigan** = *hour*:



Mwonde.  
Like what?

Aigo, naneun oneul hal  
ili neomu manha!  
Oh dear, I have so many  
things to do today!

Ojeon ahop sie suyeong su-eopi itgo,  
10si bane hakgyo eseo daenseu yeon  
seup su-eopdo itgo, geurigo ohu se sie...  
At 9:00 am I have swimming lessons.  
Then at 10:30 we are rehearsing our  
dance in school. And at 3 pm ...



Euk?  
Uhm?

Geuman! Naljjareul  
jalmot algo itgun.  
Stop! You're looking  
at the wrong date.



O? Oneuleun  
haebangida!  
Oh?? Wow, I'm  
free today!

Oneuleun toyoil inikka... da eumju  
wolyoil sigan pyoreul bogo itne.  
Today is Saturday ... you are looking  
at next Monday's timetable.

**Yeol sigan geollyeoyo.**

It takes ten hours.

열 시간 걸려요.

**Du sigan geollyeoyo.**

We have two hours.

두 시간 걸려요.

Here are some examples of time expressions in sentences: **Myeot si eyo?**

몇 시예요?

What time is it?

**Han si eyo.**

한시예요.

It's one o'clock.

**Han si ban ieyo.**

한 시 반이에요.

It's 1:30.

**Du si sipbun ieyo.**

두 시 십 분이에요.

It's 2:10.

**Daseot si osip bun ieyo.**

다섯 시 오십 분이에요.

It's 5:50.

**Ohu ne si sibo bun ieyo.**

오후 네 시 십오 분이에요.

It's 4:15 p.m.

**Ojeon ahop si ban-e sijak haeyo.**

오전 아홉 시 반에 시작해요.

We begin at 9:30 a.m.

**Achim yeodeol si-buteo bam yeol si-kkaji bappayo.**

아침 여덟 시부터 밤 열 시까지 바빠요.

I'm busy from 8 in the morning till 10 at night.







Eodi gandago? Eodiro, nuguwa ganeunde?  
Going away? Where, and with whom?

Naneun yeolheul jeongdo eodiro jom gal yejeong iya.  
I am going away for 10 days.



Wa! Bureopda. Eolma dongan isseul geonde?  
Wow! I envy you. Which dates will you be away?

Namja chingu rang geuriseuro ganda.  
Greece with my boyfriend.

Palwol i-ilbuteo sipi-ilggaji.  
From 2nd to 12th August.



Palwol i-ileun museun yoiliya?  
What day is 2nd August?

Geumyoilida.  
It is a Friday.

Joheun sigan doera! Seonmuldo itji malgo.  
Enjoy yourself! And don't forget my present.

## LESSON 19

# What Day Is It?

Counting days is somewhat irregular. The following system is very common, though the most common way you'll hear used to refer to days of the month is simply the Chinese-style number and then **il** (일), or "day". So the 5th would be **oil**, 오일 (often written as 5일) and the 27th would be **isip-chilil**, 이십칠일, both for counting the days and for giving the day of the month.

|                        |                      |        |
|------------------------|----------------------|--------|
| How many days?         | <b>Myeochil?</b>     | 몇 일?   |
| What day of the month? | <b>Museun yoil?</b>  | 무슨 요일? |
| 1(st)                  | <b>haru</b>          | 하루     |
| 2(nd)                  | <b>iteul</b>         | 이틀     |
| 3(rd)                  | <b>saheul</b>        | 사흘     |
| 4(th)                  | <b>naheul</b>        | 나흘     |
| 5(th)                  | <b>dassae</b>        | 닷새     |
| 6(th)                  | <b>yeossae</b>       | 엿새     |
| 7(th)                  | <b>ire</b>           | 이레     |
| 8(th)                  | <b>yeodeure</b>      | 여드레    |
| 9(th)                  | <b>aheure</b>        | 아흐레    |
| 10(th)                 | <b>yeol heul</b>     | 열흘     |
| 11(th)                 | <b>yeol haru</b>     | 열하루    |
| 12(th)                 | <b>yeol iteul</b>    | 열이틀    |
| 13(th)                 | <b>yeol saheul</b>   | 열사흘    |
| 14(th)                 | <b>yeol naheul</b>   | 열나흘    |
| 15(th)                 | <b>yeol dassae</b>   | 열닷새    |
| 16(th)                 | <b>yeol yeossae</b>  | 열엿새    |
| 17(th)                 | <b>yeol ire</b>      | 열이레    |
| 18(th)                 | <b>yeol yeodeure</b> | 열여드레   |

19(th)  
20(th)

**yeol aheure**  
**seumu nal**

열아흐레  
스무날

But alongside this system, there is also a Chinese system using the classifier **il** = *day* and the regular Chinese numerals: **il il**, **i il**, **sam il**, **sa il**, **o il**, etc.

Above 20, this system is the only one used: **i sip il il** = *21 days* OR *the 21st day of the month*; **i sip i il** = *22 days* OR *the 22nd day of the month*; **sam sip sam il** = *33 days*.



The names of the days of the week are as follows:

What day of the week?

**Museun yoil ieoyo?**

무슨 요일 이에요?

Monday

**Wol yoil (wo ryo il)**

월요일

Tuesday

**Hwa yoil**

화요일

Wednesday

**Su yoil**

수요일

|          |                                   |
|----------|-----------------------------------|
| Thursday | <b>Mok yoil (Mo gyoil)</b><br>목요일 |
| Friday   | <b>Geum yoil</b><br>금요일           |
| Saturday | <b>To yoil</b><br>토요일             |
| Sunday   | <b>Il yoil (iryoil)</b><br>일요일    |

Weeks are counted with either the Korean or the Chinese numerals and for a classifier you can use either **juil** or **jugan**—both mean *week*:

|                 |                                                                    |
|-----------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|
| How many weeks? | <b>Myeot jugan?</b><br>몇 주간?                                       |
| one week        | <b>han ju, il juil, han jugan, il jugan</b><br>한 주, 일주일, 한 주간, 일주간 |
| two weeks       | <b>du ju, i juil, du jugan, i jugan</b><br>두 주, 이주일, 두 주간, 이주간     |
| three weeks     | <b>se ju, sam juil, se jugan, sam jugan</b><br>세 주, 삼주일, 세 주간, 삼주간 |

## LESSON 20

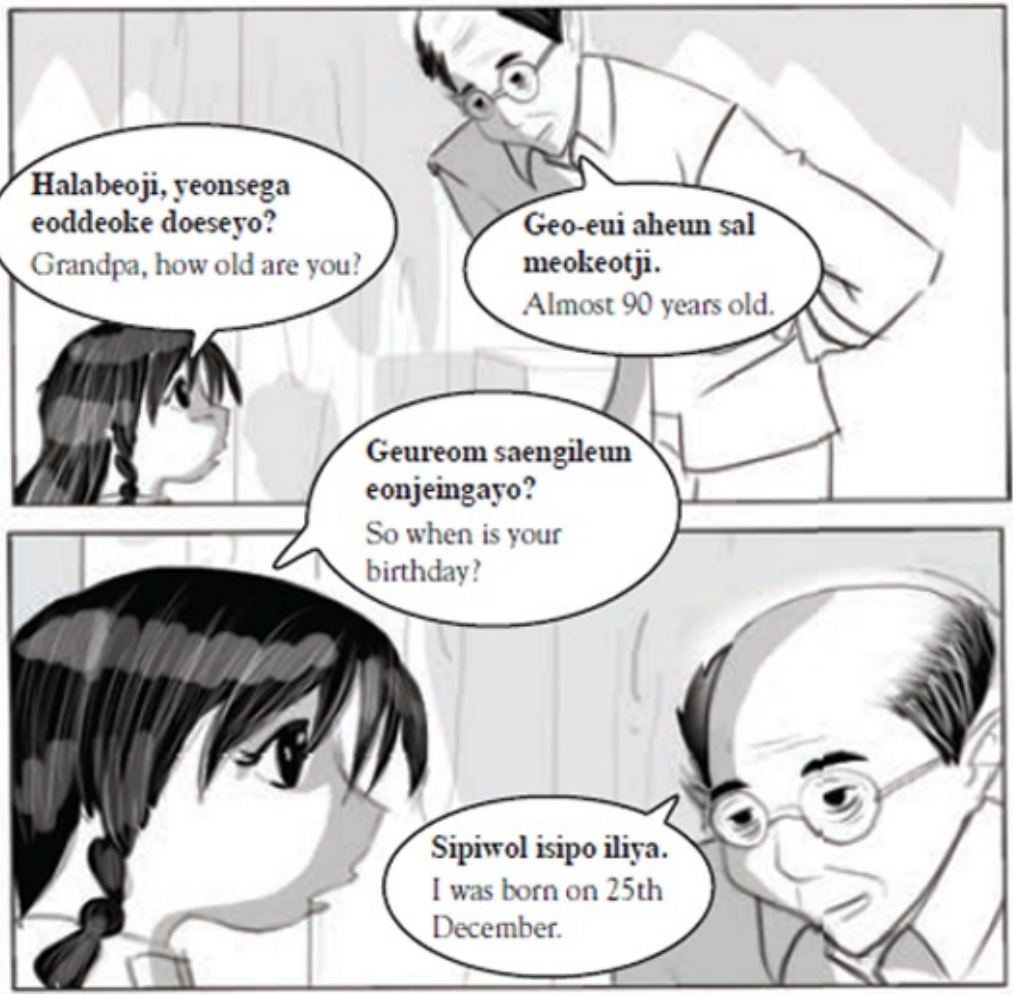
**Months and Years** Months are *COUNTED* with the classifier **dal** and the Korean numerals: **Myeot dal, han dal, du dal, seok dal, neok dal, daseot dal** = *how many, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5 months*; or with the classifier **kae-weol** and the Chinese numerals: **il gaewol, i gaewol, sam gaewol, sa gaewol, o gaewol**.

Months are *NAMED* with combinations of the Chinese numerals and **-wol** = *month*, but there are a few irregularities, starred in the list below.

Notice that January has two names:

|           |                   |                                       |
|-----------|-------------------|---------------------------------------|
| January   | <b>Il wol</b>     | (sounds like <b>i rweol</b> ) 일월      |
| February  | <b>I wol</b>      | 이월                                    |
| March     | <b>Sam wol</b>    | 삼월                                    |
| April     | <b>Sa wol</b>     | 사월                                    |
| May       | <b>O wol</b>      | 오월                                    |
| June      | <b>*Yu wol</b>    | 유월                                    |
| July      | <b>Chil wol</b>   | (sounds like <b>chi rweol</b> ) 칠월    |
| August    | <b>Pal wol</b>    | (sounds like <b>pa rweol</b> ) 팔월     |
| September | <b>Gu wol</b>     | 구월                                    |
| October   | <b>*Si wol</b>    | 시월                                    |
| November  | <b>Sip il wol</b> | (sounds like <b>si bi rweol</b> ) 십일월 |
| December  | <b>Sip i wol</b>  | (sounds like <b>si bi weol</b> ) 십이월  |

The seasons are **bom** = *spring*, **yeoreum** = *summer*, **gaeul** = *autumn*, and **gyeoul** = *winter*.



**Halabeoji, yeonsega eoddeoke doeseyo?**  
Grandpa, how old are you?

**Geo-eui aheun sal meokeotji.**  
Almost 90 years old.

**Geureom saengileun eonjeingayo?**  
So when is your birthday?

**Sipiwol isipo iliya.**  
I was born on 25th December.

Years are counted or named by using the Chinese numerals and the classifier **nyeon**, and there are a few sound changes: **il nyeon (illyeon)** 일년, **i nyeon** 이년, **sam nyeon** 삼년, **sa nyeon** 사년, **o nyeon** 오년, **yuk nyeon (yungnyeon)** 육년, **chil nyeon (chillyeon)** 칠년, **pal nyeon** 팔년, **gu nyeon** 구년, **sip nyeon (simnyeon)** 십년.

Note also **baek nyeon** 백년 = *100 years*, **cheon nyeon** 천년 = *1000 years*.

Dates are given like this: **I cheon chil nyeon, Sip i wol sip o il. 15 December 2007.** If you want to add the day of the week and the time: **Icheon chil nyeon il wol ku il to yoil ohu sesi sibo bun. 3:15 p.m., Saturday, 9 January 2007.**





Chigeum myeot siya!  
Wae ireoke neujeosseo.  
Look at the time! It's  
that late.

Ye, neujeoss  
seumnida. Eomma  
jeonyeok siksaneun?  
Yes, it is. Mom, is  
dinner ready?

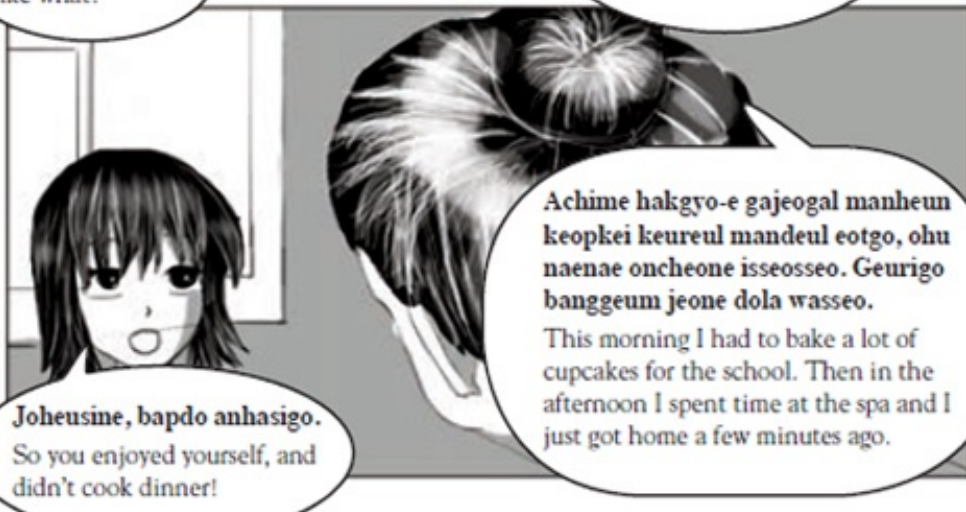
Mian, sigani  
eopseoseo ajik  
mothaesseo.  
Sorry, I don't have  
time to cook.



Geuraedo  
eommaneun  
maennal yoriman  
hasi janayo.  
But Mom, you  
cook all the time.

Oneuleun yeoreo gaji  
ildeuli manasseo.  
Today, I had a lot of  
unexpected things to do.

Yereul deulmyeon?  
Like what?



Achime hakgyo-e gajeogal manheun  
keopkei keureul mandeul eotgo, ohu  
naenae oncheone isseosseo. Geurigo  
bangeum jeone dola wasseo.

This morning I had to bake a lot of  
cupcakes for the school. Then in the  
afternoon I spent time at the spa and I  
just got home a few minutes ago.

Joheusine, bapdo anhasigo.  
So you enjoyed yourself, and  
didn't cook dinner!



## LESSON 21

**Negative Sentences** You have learned to say *no* with **ani** or **ani o**. To make a complete negative sentence, you can use an abbreviated form of this word (**an**) in front of the verb: **Handeuponeul an sasseoyo**.

핸드폰을 안 샀어요.  
I didn't buy a cell phone.

**Gim-ssi-ga an wayo.**

김씨가 안 와요.  
Mr. Kim isn't coming.

**Geu yeonghwa ajik an bwasseoyo.**

그 영화 아직 안 봤어요.  
I didn't see that movie yet.

But you *do not* use **an** with **isseoyo**: there is a special verb **eopseoyo** = *does not exist*. You can make a stronger negative by using **mot** = *not at all; not possibly; can't* instead of **an**: **Handeuponeul mot sasseoyo**.

핸드폰을 못 샀어요.  
I didn't buy a cell phone.

**Gim-ssi-ga mot wayo.**

김씨가 못 와요.  
Mr. Kim isn't coming.

**Juin-eul mot bwasseoyo.**

주인을 못 봤어요.  
I couldn't see the owner **Bumonim-kke jeonhwa-reul an haesseoyo**.  
부모님께 전화를 안 했어요  
I didn't call my parents.

**Bumonim-kke jeonhwa-reul mot haesseoyo.**

부모님께 전화를 못했어요.

I couldn't call my parents.

**Yori-reul jal an haeyo.**

요리를 잘 안 해요.

Usually, I don't cook.

**Yori-reul jal mot haeyo.**

요리를 잘 못해요.

I can't cook well.

**Sukje-reul da an haesseoyo.**

숙제를 다 안 했어요.

I didn't do all of my homework.

**Sukje-reul da mot haesseoyo.**

숙제를 다 못 했어요.

I couldn't do all of my homework Except for very short sentences, Koreans prefer to say their negatives in a more complicated way. They change the verb to a special form we'll call the **-ji** form and then add **anayo** (안아요).

You will learn to make the **-ji** forms for new verbs in Lesson 23. The negative of an equational sentence like  $A = B$  is a bit different: **Sinmun-eul saji anasseoyo.**

신문을 사지 않았어요.

I didn't buy a newspaper.

**Beoseu-ga oji anayo.**

버스가 오지 않아요.

The bus is not coming.

Some examples of negative sentences: **Geu-ga jeonhwa reul an haeyo.**

그가 전화를 안 해요.

He didn't call me.

**Na-neun hakgyo-eseo gongbu haji anayo.**

나는 학교에서 공부하지 않아요.

I don't study in school.

**Na-neun don i eopseoyo geu rae seo, geuk jang-e gaji mot haeyo.**

나는 돈이 없어요. 그래서 극장에 가지 못해요.

I haven't any money, so I can't go to the theater.

**Geu yeonghwa-reul mot bwasseoyo.**

그 영화를 못 봤어요.

I couldn't see that movie.



**Gage-e gatjiman, amugeot-do saji mot haeseoyo.**

가게에 갔지만 아무것도 사지 못했어요.

I went to the store. But I couldn't buy anything.

**Geogi-seo gudu palji anayo?**

거기서 구두 팔지 않아요?

Don't they sell shoes there?

**Gudu an parayo.**

구두 안 팔아요.

They don't sell them at all.

**Geu du haksang-eun yeonge-reul jal mot haeyo.**

그 두 학생은 영어를 잘 못해요.

Those two students couldn't (didn't) speak in English well.

**Na-neun Hangungmal-eul jal mot haeyo.**

나는 한국말을 잘 못해요.

I can't speak Korean well.

English formula

Korean formula

A = B.

A **ga**, B **eyo**.

A가 B예요.

A is B.

Examples: **Joe-neun moksa imnida.**

저는 목사입니다.

I'm a preacher.

**Gimssi-neun seonsaengnim imnida.**

김씨는 선생님입니다.

Mr. Kim is a teacher.

English formula

Korean formula

A ≠ B.

A-**neun**, B-**ga anieyo**.

A는 B가 아니예요.

A is not B.

**Jeo-neun moksa-ga animnida.**

저는 목사가 아닙니다.

I'm not a preacher.

**Gimssie-neun seonsaengnim-i anieyo.**

김씨는 선생님이 아니예요.

Mr. Kim is not a teacher.

**Chaeki sajeonieyo.**

책이 사전이에요.

The book is a dictionary.

**Chaekeun sajeoni anieyo.**

책은 사전이 아니에요.

The book is not a dictionary.

**Keompyuteoga noteubukieyo.**

컴퓨터가 노트북이에요.

The computer is a laptop.

**Keompyuteoneun noteubuki anieyo.**

컴퓨터는 노트북이 아니에요.

The computer is not a laptop.

Notice that the affirmative sentence attaches the verb **ieyo** directly to the noun (B) but in the negative sentence the word **ani** is attached to the copula and the noun (B) is followed by the subject particle. The noun A is also followed by the subject particle. (It is the bigger subject of the whole expression B-**ga anieyo**.) But this can be changed to the topic particle in order to emphasize the *not*.

Please note as well that a couple of the above examples are written in the formal style. In that style, you use **입니다** and **안입니다** instead of **예요** and **아니예요**.

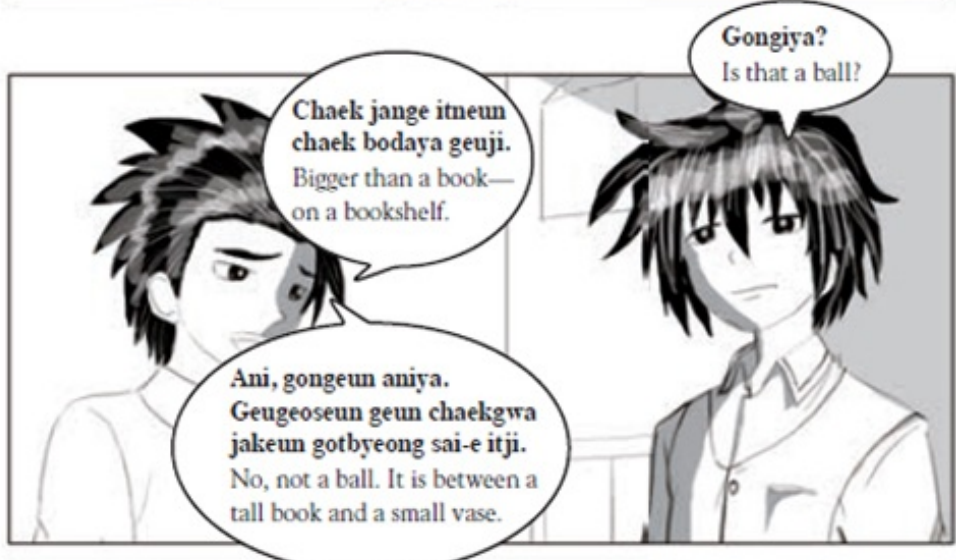


Gati geim haja – naeja hinteureul  
jul teni hanbeon matchwobwa.  
Let's play a game – you try and find  
an item with the clues I give.

Okei – geugeoya swipji  
mwo.  
OK – that sounds easy.

Aju geun geosinde.  
It is a big thing.

Eodie? Eolmana  
geunde?  
Where? How big?



Chaek jange itneun  
chaek bodaya geuji.  
Bigger than a book—  
on a bookshelf.

Gongiya?  
Is that a ball?

Ani, gongeun aniya.  
Geugeoseun geun chaekgwa  
jakeun gotbyeong sai-e itji.  
No, not a ball. It is between a  
tall book and a small vase.



Binggo! Majasseo.  
Bingo! You got it.

Jeongdap! Jangnangam  
koggiri!  
I see it! It is a toy elephant!



## LESSON 22

# Where Things Are

To locate objects in English you usually

need only a preposition (*in, at, on, under, behind*), but sometimes you use a prepositional phrase which includes a noun (*in front of, on top of, at the side of*). This is the usual Korean way of doing it. Here are some of these “place words” which are nouns in Korean. To locate a thing or an event, you use the particle **e** = *at, in, etc.* or **(e)seo** = *happens at* after one of these words:

|                     |                                         |     |
|---------------------|-----------------------------------------|-----|
| <b>an</b>           | inside (something spacious)             | 안   |
| <b>sok</b>          | inside (something small or rather full) | 속   |
| <b>bak</b>          | outside                                 | 밖   |
| <b>wi</b>           | (on) top of, above                      | 위   |
| <b>arae</b>         | below, underneath                       | 아래  |
| <b>mit</b>          | (at the) bottom of                      | 밑   |
| <b>ap</b>           | front                                   | 앞   |
| <b>dwi</b>          | behind                                  | 뒤   |
| <b>yeop</b>         | beside                                  | 옆   |
| <b>oenjjok</b>      | left side of                            | 왼쪽  |
| <b>oreunjjok</b>    | right side of                           | 오른쪽 |
| <b>geonneopyeon</b> | across from                             | 건너편 |
| <b>daeum</b>        | next (to)                               | 다음  |
| <b>sai</b>          | between                                 | 사이  |

Here are some examples: **Jumeoni sok-e mueot-i isseoyo?**

주머니 속에 무엇이 있어요?

What do you have in your pocket?

**Gimssi yeop-e nug-a anjayo?**

김씨 옆에 누가 앉아요?

Who sits next to Mr. Kim?

**Gyohoe yeop-e gongwon-i isseoyo.**

교회 옆에 공원이 있어요.

There's a park next to the church.

**Changmun bak-euro namu-ga boyeoyo.**

창문 밖으로 나무가 보여요.

Outside the window a tree can be seen.

**Namu mit-e gae han mari-ga nuwo isseoyo.**

나무 밑에 개 한 마리가 누워 있어요.

A dog is lying at the foot of the tree.

**Namu wi-e jip han chae-ga isseoyo.**

나무 위에 집 한 채가 있어요.

There is a house on top of the tree.

**Geu jip an-e sae deul-i salgo isseoyo.**

그 집 안에 새들이 살고 있어요.

There are birds living in that house.

**Hakgyo oreunjjok-e gil-i isseoyo.**

학교 오른쪽에 길이 있어요.

There's a road on the right of the school.

**Yeonpil-eul eodi-da dwojji?**

연필을 어디다 뒀지?

Where did I put my pencil?

**Gabang sok-e dueonna?**

가방 속에 두었나?

Did I put it in my briefcase?

**Jumeoni sok-e dueonna?**

주머니 속에 두었나?

Did I put it in my pocket?

**Botong chaeksang wi-e noayo.**

보통 책상 위에 놓아요.

Usually I put it on the desk.

**Chaeksang arae-(e) eopseoyo?**

책상 아래(에) 없어요?

Isn't it under the desk?

**Maru wi-e eopseoyo?**

마루 위에 없어요?

Isn't it on the floor?

**Chaek sai-e isseoyo?**

책 사이에 있어요?

Is it between those two books?

**Ne, majayo. Chaek sai-e inneyo.**

네 맞아요. 책 사이에 있네요.

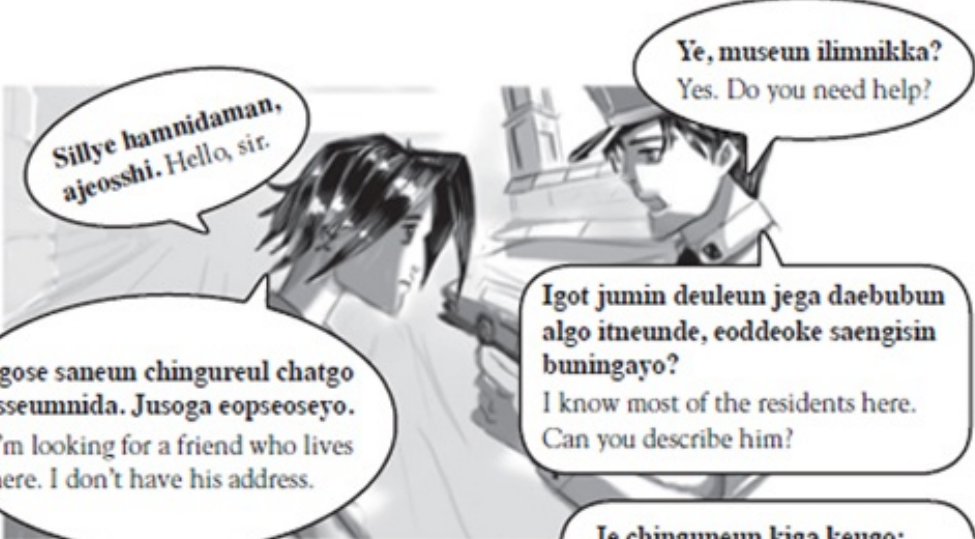
You're right. It's between this book and that one.

**Je-ga yeonpil-eul chaek sai-e dueonneyo.**

제가 연필을 책 사이에 두었네요.

I put my pencil between that book and this one.

*On a street in Seoul*



Sillye hamnidaman,  
ajeosshi. Hello, sir.

Ye, museun ilimnikka?  
Yes. Do you need help?


Igose saneun chingureul chatgo  
isseumnida. Jusoga eopseoseyo.  
I'm looking for a friend who lives  
here. I don't have his address.

Igot jumin deuleun jega daebubun  
algo itneunde, eoddeoke saengisin  
buningayo?

I know most of the residents here.  
Can you describe him?


Je chinguneun kiga keugo;  
ae-yeonga inde... chinguneun  
gugeupcha unjeonsaro  
byeongwon eseo ilhago isseoyo.

My friend is tall; he likes to  
smoke and ... he works in a  
hospital as an ambulance driver.



Eum... geurigo ddoyo?  
Mm ... any other details?

A, ye. Angyeongseul sseoyo.  
Oh yes. He wears glasses.



Okei, na geu saram alayo.  
Jega chingu buneui jipeul  
allyeo deurilggeyo.

Ok, I know that person.  
Let me give you the  
directions to his house.

## LESSON 23

# Verbs and Adjectives

The nucleus of a Korean sentence is the verb expression at the end. A verb in Korean is a word which means either *something happens*, *someone DOES something* or *something IS a certain way*.

Most English adjectives correspond to verbs in Korean: **keoyo** = *is big*, **jeogeoyo** = *is little*, **manayo** = *is much, are many*, **ippeoyo** = *is cute* etc. Notice that these Korean words do not mean *big, little, much, cute* but *IS big, IS little, IS much, IS cute*.

Later you will learn how to put such verbs in front of nouns to modify them—in Korean instead of saying *a big house* you have to say the equivalent of *a house which is big*.

Now there are a few English adjectives which correspond to Korean nouns: **sae** = *new*, **on** = *whole, entire*. These can modify a following noun just by being in front of it: **sae moja** = *new hat*, **on segye** = *whole world*. But most English adjectives correspond to Korean verbs.

Each Korean verb appears in a great many different forms—as many as 500. Some of these forms are fairly rare, but many are common. In this book, you will learn a few of the most useful forms and find out a little about the structure of verb forms in general, so that you will be better prepared to cope with the bewildering number of forms you hear.

This isn't nearly as daunting as it may seem. You'll have to learn a lot of different verb endings to become truly fluent in Korean, but you don't need to know many at all to be able to communicate with people quite effectively. Remember that Koreans, particularly when using the polite style, often use the same ending to mean a wide variety of things by just changing the intonation.

Each verb form consists of a BASE and an ENDING. Sometimes the ending can be divided into several parts, but we will talk about each ending as a unit. There are two things to learn about each verb base: (1) how it is used, what it means; (2) how its shape changes when you add the various endings. And there are two things to learn about each ending: (A) how it is used, what it means; (B) how its shape changes when you attach it to the various kinds of bases. Fortunately the shape changes are rather systematic, and if you learn a few typical verbs you

can make up forms for new verbs by analogy.

The most complicated rules are for INFINITIVE or **-eo** ending. Since this is the form which occurs with the particle **yo** in the polite style, it is perhaps best just to memorize the verb from this form to start with and find one other form where the base of the verb appears in its basic form.

Below you will find a list of typical verb bases, showing (1) the polite present form (**-eo yo**, **-a yo**, **-e yo**, with some irregularities); (2) the polite past form (**-eosseoyo** or **-asseoyo** with some irregularities); (3) the polite present negative (**-ji anayo**). To make the negative past you replace **anayo** with **anasseoyo**: **An jabasseoyo. Jabji anasseoyo.**

안 잡았어요.    잡지 않았어요.  
did not catch.    didn't catch.

Finally there is given the basic shape of the BASE, from which the various forms are predictable. There are two general classes of bases: CONSONANT and VOWEL. The basic shape of consonant bases is found when you remove the **-eoyo** or **ayo** ending; the basic shape of vowel verbs appears when you take away the **-ji** ending.

### 1. CONSONANT BASES

| BASE             | MEANING            | DOES; IS               | DID; WAS                    | DOESN'T; ISN'T              |
|------------------|--------------------|------------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| <b>jab</b><br>잡  | catches            | <b>jabayo</b><br>잡아요   | <b>jabasseoyo</b><br>잡았어요   | <b>jabji anayo</b><br>잡지않아요 |
| <b>nop</b><br>높  | is high            | <b>nopayo</b><br>높아요   | <b>nopasseoyo</b><br>높았어요   | <b>nopji anayo</b><br>높지않아요 |
| <b>eops</b><br>없 | is non<br>existent | <b>eopseoyo</b><br>없어요 | <b>eopseosseoyo</b><br>없었어요 | —                           |
| <b>dad</b><br>닫  | closes             | <b>dadayo</b><br>닫아요   | <b>dadasseoyo</b><br>닫았어요   | <b>datji anayo</b><br>닫지않아요 |

|                    |          |                        |                             |                               |
|--------------------|----------|------------------------|-----------------------------|-------------------------------|
| <b>gat-</b><br>같   | is like  | <b>gatayo</b><br>같아요   | <b>gatasseyo</b><br>같았어요    | <b>gatji anayo</b><br>같지 않아요  |
| <b>us</b><br>웃     | laughs   | <b>useoyo</b><br>웃어요   | <b>useosseoyo</b><br>웃었어요   | <b>utji anayo</b><br>웃지 않아요   |
| <b>iss</b><br>있    | exists   | <b>isseoyo</b><br>있어요  | <b>iseosseoyo</b><br>있었어요   | —                             |
| <b>chatj</b><br>찾  | finds    | <b>chajayo</b><br>찾아요  | <b>chajasseoyo</b><br>찾았어요  | <b>chatji anayo</b><br>찾지 않아요 |
| <b>ssijj-</b><br>씻 | washes   | <b>ssiseoyo</b><br>씻어요 | <b>ssiseosseoyo</b><br>씻었어요 | <b>ssitji anayo</b><br>씻지 않아요 |
| <b>ilg-</b><br>읽   | reads    | <b>ilgeoyo</b><br>읽어요  | <b>ilgeosseoyo</b><br>읽었어요  | <b>ilgji anayo</b><br>읽지 않아요  |
| <b>ilh-</b><br>잃   | loses    | <b>ireoyo</b><br>잃어요   | <b>ireosseoyo</b><br>잃었어요   | <b>ilchi anayo</b><br>잃지 않아요  |
| <b>halt-</b><br>핥  | licks    | <b>haltayo</b><br>핥아요  | <b>haltasseoyo</b><br>핥았어요  | <b>haljji anayo</b><br>핥지 않아요 |
| <b>balb-</b><br>밟  | steps on | <b>balbayo</b><br>밟아요  | <b>balbasseoyo</b><br>밟았어요  | <b>balpji anayo</b><br>밟지 않아요 |
| <b>eulp-</b><br>읊  | chants   | <b>eulpeoyo</b><br>읊어요 | <b>eulpeosseoyo</b><br>읊었어요 | <b>eulpji anayo</b><br>읊지 않아요 |
| <b>noh-</b><br>놓   | puts     | <b>noayo</b><br>놓아요    | <b>noasseoyo</b><br>놓았어요    | <b>nochi anayo</b><br>놓지 않아요  |

|                              |                              |                                      |                                  |
|------------------------------|------------------------------|--------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| <b>meog-</b> eats            | <b>meogeoyo</b>              | <b>meogeosseoyo</b><br><b>meokji</b> | <b>anayo</b>                     |
| 먹                            | 먹어요                          | 먹었어요                                 | 먹지 않아요                           |
| <b>kkakk-</b> cuts           | <b>kkakkayo</b>              | <b>kkakkasseoyo</b>                  | <b>kkakji anayo</b>              |
| 깎                            | 깎아요                          | 깎았어요                                 | 깎지 않아요                           |
| <b>gam-</b> shampoos         | <b>gamayo</b>                | <b>gamasseoyo</b>                    | <b>gamjji anayo</b>              |
| 감                            | 감아요                          | 감았어요                                 | 감지 않아요                           |
| <b>jeom-</b> is young        | <b>jeolmeoyo</b>             | <b>jeolmeosseoyo</b>                 | <b>jeomjji anayo</b>             |
| 젊                            | 젊어요                          | 젊었어요                                 | 젊지 않아요                           |
| <b>sin-</b> wears on<br>feet | <b>sineoyo</b>               | <b>sineosseoyo</b>                   | <b>sinjji anayo</b>              |
| 신                            | 신어요                          | 신었어요                                 | 신지 않아요                           |
| <b>anj-</b> sits             | <b>anjayo</b>                | <b>anjasseoyo</b>                    | <b>anjji anayo</b>               |
| 앉                            | 앉아요                          | 앉았어요                                 | 앉지 않아요                           |
| <b>bureo-</b> breaks         | <b>bureo</b><br><b>jeoyo</b> | <b>bureojyeosseoyo</b>               | <b>bureojiji</b><br><b>anayo</b> |
| 부러                           | 부러져요                         | 부러졌어요                                | 부러지지 않아요                         |

## II. VOWEL BASES

---

|                        |                |                    |                    |
|------------------------|----------------|--------------------|--------------------|
| <b>(i)-</b> is, equals | <b>ieyo</b>    | <b>ieosseoyo</b>   | —                  |
|                        | 이에요            | 이었어요               |                    |
|                        | <b>-eyo</b>    | <b>yosseoyo</b>    | —                  |
|                        | 에요             | 였어요                |                    |
| <b>swi-</b> rests      | <b>swieoyo</b> | <b>swieosseoyo</b> | <b>swiji anayo</b> |
| 쉬                      | 쉬어요            | 쉬었어요               | 쉬지 않아요             |



|                                    |                           |                                |                                      |
|------------------------------------|---------------------------|--------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| <b>gidari-</b> waits<br>기다리        | <b>gidaryeoyo</b><br>기다려요 | <b>gidaryeosseoyo</b><br>기다렸어요 | <b>gidariji anayo</b><br>기다리지<br>않아요 |
| <b>se-</b> counts<br>세             | <b>seyo</b><br>세요         | <b>seeosseoyo</b><br>세었어요      | <b>seji anayo</b><br>세지 않아요          |
| <b>dwe-</b> becomes<br>되           | <b>dweyo</b><br>되요        | <b>dwesseoyo</b><br>됐어요        | <b>dweji anayo</b><br>되지 않아요         |
| <b>nae-</b> pays<br>내              | <b>naeyo</b><br>내요        | <b>naessoeyo</b><br>냈어요        | <b>naeji anayo</b><br>내지 않아요         |
| <b>sseu-</b> writes<br>쓰           | <b>sseyo</b><br>써요        | <b>sseosseoyo</b><br>썼어요       | <b>sseuji anayo</b><br>쓰지 않아요        |
| <b>ga-</b> goes<br>가               | <b>gayo</b><br>가요         | <b>gasseoyo</b><br>갔어요         | <b>gaji anayo</b><br>가지 않아요          |
| <b>ju-</b> gives<br>주              | <b>jwoyo</b><br>줘요        | <b>jueosseoyo</b><br>주었어요      | <b>juji anayo</b><br>주지 않아요          |
| <b>bo-</b> sees, reads<br>보        | <b>bwayo</b><br>봐요        | <b>bwasseoyo</b><br>봤어요        | <b>boji anayo</b><br>보지 않아요          |
| (VOWEL BASES WITH IRREGULAR FORMS) |                           |                                |                                      |
| <b>ha-</b> does<br>하               | <b>haeyo</b><br>해요        | <b>haesseoyo</b><br>했어요        | <b>haji anayo</b><br>하지 않아요          |
| <b>bureu-</b> calls<br>부르          | <b>bulleoyo</b><br>불러요    | <b>bulleosseoyo</b><br>불렀어요    | <b>bureuji anayo</b><br>부르지 않아요      |

|                                 |                   |                                  |                                |
|---------------------------------|-------------------|----------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| <b>pureu-</b> is blue,<br>green | <b>pureureoyo</b> | <b>pureureo</b><br><b>sseoyo</b> | <b>pureuji</b><br><b>anayo</b> |
| 푸르                              | 푸르러요              | 푸르렀어요                            | 푸르지 않아요                        |

NOTE: The **-ji** forms for **isseoyo**, **eopseoyo**, and **ieyo** are **itji**, **eopji**, and **iji**. They are very seldom used in the negative construction.

Most of the other verbs you have met will fit into one of the above categories. For example, **wayo** = *comes* works just like **bwayo** = *sees*:

|           |         |             |                 |                  |
|-----------|---------|-------------|-----------------|------------------|
| BASE      | MEANING | DOES; IS    | DID; WAS        | DOESN'T; ISN'T   |
| <b>o-</b> | comes   | <b>wayo</b> | <b>wasseoyo</b> | <b>oji anayo</b> |
| 오         |         | 와요          | 왔어요             | 오지 않아요           |

**Yeppeoyo** = *is is pretty/cute/beautiful* and **keoyo** = *is big* are like **sseoyo** = *writes*:

|                        |                 |                     |                       |
|------------------------|-----------------|---------------------|-----------------------|
| <b>yeppeu-</b> is cute | <b>yeppeoyo</b> | <b>yeppeosseoyo</b> | <b>yeppeuji anayo</b> |
| 예쁘                     | 예빠요             | 예뻤어요                | 예쁘지 않아요               |
| <b>keu-</b> is big     | <b>keoyo</b>    | <b>keosseoyo</b>    | <b>keuji anayo</b>    |
| 크                      | 커요              | 컸어요                 | 크지 않아요                |

**jeogeoyo** = *is small* works like **meogeoyo** = *eats*. **Manayo** = *is much, are many* and **anayo** = *does not, is not* have forms like those of **kkeuneoyo** = *cuts*; **badayo** = *gets* has forms like those of **dadeoyo** = *closes*. **Mollayo** = *does not know* and **mallayo** = *gets dry* work like **bulleoyo** = *calls*:

|               |          |          |                    |                          |
|---------------|----------|----------|--------------------|--------------------------|
| BASE          | MEANING  | DOES; IS | DID; WAS           | DOESN'T; ISN'T           |
| <b>mareu-</b> | gets dry |          | <b>mallasseoyo</b> | <b>mareuji anasseoyo</b> |
| 마르            |          |          | 말랐어요               | 마르지 않았어요                 |

Here are a few examples of these verbs in sentences.

**Geu san-i nopayo.**

그 산이 높아요.

That mountain is tall.

**Wae mun-eul dajji anasseoyo?**

왜 문을 닫지 않았어요?

Why didn't you close the door?

**Geu sonyeon-i nae chingu gajji anayo.**

그 소년이 내 친구 같지 않아요.

That boy is not like my friend.

**Eodi-eseo geu don-eul chajasseoyo?**

어디에서 그 돈을 찾았어요?

Where did you find the money?

**Agi-ga wae uiji anayo?**

아기가 왜 웃지 않아요?

Why isn't the baby laughing?

**Moja-reul ireo beoryeosseoyo.**

모자를 잃어버렸어요.

I lost my hat.

**Jakeseul ireobeoriji anaseoyo.**

자켓을 잃어버리지 않았어요.

I didn't lose my jacket.

**Gabang-eul teibeul wie nochi anasseoyo.**

가방을 테이블 위에 놓지 않았어요.

I didn't put my briefcase on the table.

**Geu-neun gogi-reul meokji anayo.**


그는 고기를 먹지 않아요.  
He doesn't eat meat (at all).

**Neo-ege don-eul juji anatta.**

너에게 돈을 주지 않았다.  
I didn't give you any money.

**Don-i eopseoseo gyesan haji mot haeyo.**

돈이 없어서 계산하지 못해요.  
I haven't any money; so, I can't pay (you).



Ibeon ju toyoil jeonyeok siksa-e nuga onya?  
Who is coming this Saturday for dinner?

Je du ddalgwa maknae adeuliyo.  
My two girls and their younger brother.

Bakseobang hante museun il itnya?  
What happens to son-in-law Park?

Illo bappayo. Keunoppa gajokdeuldo onayo?  
He is busy with work. Is my eldest brother's family coming?

Geureom, keunoppa gajokdeul yeoseot myeongina ondanda.  
Yes, his family of 6 are coming.

Yeoseot myeongyo? Sikguga eonje yeoseoseuro neuleosseoyo?  
Six? When have they grown to six?

Ddo halabeoji hago, jakeun gomowa namja chingudo ondanda.  
And there will be grandpa, younger aunt and her boyfriend.

Naeil jangboreo gaja.  
Let's go shopping for food tomorrow.

Gaega du marirang hap haeseo.  
That includes the two dogs.

—

## LESSON 24

# Relatives

The Korean terms for relatives can be divided into two groups: those for which some of the words differ according to the sex of the person related (whether we're talking about a man's brother or a woman's brother), and those for which the words are the same regardless of the sex of the person related. In the lists some words are given in capital letters; these are HONORIFIC—they are used about someone else's relatives when you want to show special politeness, or they are used in addressing older relatives of your own:

| 1. RELATIVE     | MAN'S                          | WOMAN'S                                    |
|-----------------|--------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|
| older brother   | <b>HYEONG (NIM)</b><br>형       | <b>oppa</b><br>오빠                          |
| older sister    | <b>nuna, NUNIM</b><br>누나, 누님   | <b>eonni</b><br>언니                         |
| younger brother | <b>dongsaeng</b><br>동생         | <b>namdongsaeng</b><br>남동생                 |
| younger sister  | <b>yeodongsaeng</b><br>여동생     | <b>dongsaeng</b><br>동생                     |
| brothers        | <b>hyeongje</b><br>형제          | <b>oppa wa namdongsaeng*</b><br>오빠와 남동생    |
| sisters         | <b>jamae</b><br>자매             | <b>jamae</b><br>자매                         |
| spouse          | <b>an(h)ae, buin</b><br>아내, 부인 | <b>nampyeon</b><br>남편                      |
| father-in-law   | <b>jangin</b><br>장인            | <b>siabeoji, SIABEONIM</b><br>시아버지, 시아버님   |
| mother-in-law   | <b>jangmo</b><br>장모            | <b>sieomeoni, SIEOMEONIM</b><br>시어머니, 시어머님 |

\* This means “older brother and younger brother.” If you have two older brothers, you would say 오빠들 (oppadeul); for two younger brothers, say 남동생 들 (namdongsaengdeul).

## 2. RELATIVE

grandfather

ANYBODY’S

**harabeoji, HARABEONIM**

할아버지, 할아버님

grandmother

**halmeoni, HALMEONIM**

할머니, 할머니

parents

**bumo, BUMONIM**

부모, 부모님

father

**abeoji, ABEONIM**

아버지, 아버님

mother

**comeoni, EOMEONIM**

어머니, 어머니

children

**ai(deul), ae (deul)**

아이(들), 애(들)

son

**adeul, ADEUNIM**

아들, 아드님

daughter

**ttal, TTANIM**

딸, 따님

grandchildren

**sonju, sonjuttal**

손주, 손주딸

grandson

**sonja**

손자

granddaughter

**sonnyeo**

손녀

son-in-law

**sawi**

사위

daughter-in-law

**myeoneuri**

며느리

fiance(e)

**yakhonja**



|                   |                                                                                   |
|-------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| cousin            | 약혼자<br><b>sachon</b>                                                              |
| uncle             | 사촌<br><b>ajeossi, samchon, keun abeoji, jageun abeoji</b><br>아저씨, 삼촌, 큰아버지, 작은아버지 |
| aunt              | <b>ajumeoni, imo, gomo</b><br>아주머니, 이모, 고모                                        |
| nephew or niece   | <b>joka</b><br>조카                                                                 |
| niece             | <b>yeoja joka</b><br>여자 조카                                                        |
| nephew            | <b>namja joka</b><br>남자 조카                                                        |
| family            | <b>gajok, jip, daek</b><br>가족, 집, 댁                                               |
| members of family | <b>sikku</b><br>식구                                                                |

NOTE: The words for *grandfather* and *grandmother* are also used to mean *old man* and *old woman*. The words for *uncle* and *aunt* are used to mean *(older) man*, *(older) lady* especially in expressions by and to children like: *The man who lives next door to us*; *Say hello to the lady, dear*.

Here are some examples of these words in sentences.

**Uri gajok-eun daegajok ieyo. Sikku-ga manayo.**

우리 가족은 대가족이에요. 식구가 많아요.

My (our) family's large; there are a lot of us.

**Myeot bun iseoyo?**

몇 분이세요?

How many (honored persons) are you?

**Yeol gop sikku eyo. Na-hago, anae, ttal dul, adeul set-i isseoyo.**

일곱 식구예요. 나하고, 아내, 딸 둘 아들 셋이있어요.

There are seven. My wife and I, two daughters. and three sons.

**Abeomnim, comeonim-i jeohi-hago saseyo.**

아버님, 어머님이 저희하고 사세요.

Father and Mother are living with us.

**Bumonim kkaji modu ahop saram ieoyo.**

부모님까지 모두 아홉 사람이예요.

Together with my parents that is nine.

**Ajik du saram deo itji anayo?**

아직 두 사람 더 있지 않아요?

Aren't there still two people (more)?

**Nugu nugu eyo?**

누구 누구예요?

Who (and who) are they?

**Goyangi han mari hago gae han mari eyo.**

고양이 한 마리하고 개 한 마리에요.

They are a cat and a dog.

**Jageun abeoji-ga ttal-ege goyangi-reul jusyeosseoyo.**

작은아버지가 딸에게 고양이를 주셨어요.

Uncle gave the cat to my daughter.

**Yeopjip harabeoji-kkeseo gae-reul jusyeosseoyo.**

옆집 할아버지께서 개를 주셨어요.

The old man next door gave the dog to our family.

## LESSON 25

**Honorifics** When you talk about someone who has a relatively high social status—a government official, a foreign guest, a minister, a teacher—you use some special forms called HONORIFICS. These forms are also frequently used for not just the third but also the second person—it's often a way to show I'm talking about YOU without actually using a pronoun.

You have come across some honorific nouns already:

|                |                                                 |     |
|----------------|-------------------------------------------------|-----|
| <b>bun</b>     | an honored person                               | 분   |
| <b>abeonim</b> | honored father (or father of an honored person) | 아버님 |
| <b>daek</b>    | honored house or family                         | -댁  |
| <b>jinji</b>   | honored food                                    | 진지  |

We even find an honorific particle **kke** = *to* or *for* (*an honored person*)—this is the honorific equivalent of **hante**, **ege**, and **bogo**: **Harabeoji-kke pyeonji-reul sseosseoyo.**

할아버지께 편지를 썼어요.  
I wrote a letter to Grandfather.

**Kkeseo** means *from an honored person*: **Moksa nim-kkeseo pyeonji-reul sseusyeoseoyo.**

목사님께서 편지를 쓰셨어요.  
I received a letter from the pastor.

There are also a few special honorific verbs. For *an honored person eats* instead of **meogeoyo** you use **chapsuseyo** or **chapsueoyo**. For *an honored person stays or is in a place* you use **keseyo** instead of **isseyo**: **Abeonim-i daek-e keseyo?**

아버님이 댁에 계세요?  
Is your father at home?

But for the meaning *an honored person has something* you use **iseueseyo**, the

expected honorific of **iseyo**: **Abeonim-i geu japji-reul gajigo geseyo?**

아버님이 그 잡지를 가지고 계세요?

Does your father have that magazine?

The negative of **geseyo** is **an geseyo**: **Jip-e eomeon-i geseyo?**

집에 어머니 계세요?

Is your mother at home?

**Daek-e an geseyo?**

댁에 안 계세요?

Isn't she at home?

Most verbs are made honorific very easily—you just slip a suffix onto the base before you attach the endings. The suffix has the basic shape **-eusi**—after a consonant base, **-si**—after a vowel base. But the final **i** drops when the ending begins with a vowel.

Here are some examples with verbs you have had:

| MEANING | ORDINARY              |                            | HONORIFIC                |                                  |
|---------|-----------------------|----------------------------|--------------------------|----------------------------------|
|         | PRESENT               | PAST                       | PRESENT                  | PAST                             |
| catches | <b>jabayo</b><br>잡아요  | <b>jabaseoyo</b><br>잡았어요   | <b>jabeuseyo</b><br>잡으세요 | <b>jabeusyeosseoyo</b><br>잡으셨어요  |
| closes  | <b>dadayo</b><br>닫아요  | <b>dadasseoyo</b><br>닫았어요  | <b>dadeuseyo</b><br>닫으세요 | <b>dadeusyeo-sseoyo</b><br>닫으셨어요 |
| laughs  | <b>useoyo</b><br>웃어요  | <b>useosseoyo</b><br>웃었어요  | <b>useuseyo</b><br>웃으세요  | <b>useusyeosseoyo</b><br>웃으셨어요   |
| reads   | <b>ilgeoyo</b><br>읽어요 | <b>ilgeosseoyo</b><br>읽었어요 | <b>ilgeuseyo</b><br>읽으세요 | <b>ilgeusyeo-sseoyo</b><br>읽으셨어요 |
| puts    | <b>noayo</b><br>놓아요   | <b>noasseoyo</b><br>놓았어요   | <b>noeuseyo</b><br>놓으세요  | <b>noeusyeo-sseoyo</b><br>놓으셨어요  |

|        |                        |                                        |                                       |                                               |
|--------|------------------------|----------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| cuts   | <b>kkakkayo</b><br>깎아요 | <b>kkakka</b><br><b>sseoyo</b><br>깎았어요 | <b>kkakkeu</b><br><b>seyo</b><br>깎으세요 | <b>kkakkeu-</b><br><b>syeosseoyo</b><br>깎으셨어요 |
| sits   | <b>anjayo</b><br>앉아요   | <b>anjasseoyo</b><br>앉았어요              | <b>anjeuseyo</b><br>앉으세요              | <b>anjeusyeo-sseoyo</b><br>앉으셨어요              |
| rests  | <b>swieoyo</b><br>쉬어요  | <b>swieoseoyo</b><br>쉬었어요              | <b>swiseyo</b><br>쉬세요                 | <b>swisyeosseoyo</b><br>쉬셨어요                  |
| pays   | <b>naeyo</b><br>내요     | <b>naeosseoyo</b><br>내었어요              | <b>naeseyo</b><br>내세요                 | <b>naesyeosseoyo</b><br>내셨어요                  |
| writes | <b>sseoyo</b><br>써요    | <b>sseosseoyo</b><br>썼어요               | <b>sseuseyo</b><br>쓰세요                | <b>sseusyeosseoyo</b><br>쓰셨어요                 |
| goes   | <b>gayo</b><br>가요      | <b>gasseoyo</b><br>갔어요                 | <b>gaseyo</b><br>가세요                  | <b>gasyeosseoyo</b><br>가셨어요                   |
| gives  | <b>jwoyo</b><br>줘요     | <b>jueosseoyo</b><br>주었어요              | <b>juseyo</b><br>주세요                  | <b>jusyeosseoyo</b><br>주셨어요                   |
| sees   | <b>bwayo</b><br>봐요     | <b>bwasseoyo</b><br>봤어요                | <b>boseyo</b><br>보세요                  | <b>bosyeosseoyo</b><br>보셨어요                   |
| reads  | <b>ilgeoyo</b><br>읽어요  | <b>ilgeosseoyo</b><br>읽었어요             | <b>ilgeoboseyo</b><br>읽어보<br>세요       | <b>ilgeobo-syeosseoyo</b><br>읽어보셨<br>어요       |
| does   | <b>haeyo</b><br>해요     | <b>haesseoyo</b><br>했어요                | <b>haseyo</b><br>하세요                  | <b>hasyeosseoyo</b><br>하셨어요                   |

For negative honorific statements, you can make either the **-ji** form or the **anayo** honorific; or if you really want to do it up fancy, make both of them honorific: **jusiji anayo**, **juji aneuseyo**, **jusiji aneuseyo**, **juji aneusyeosseoyo**, **jusiji aneusseosseoyo**.

In addition to the verb **jwoyo** = *gives* there is another verb **deuryeo yo** = *gives to someone honored*. So **juseyo** means *someone honored gives* or *you give me*, **deuryeo yo** means *I give someone honored* or *I give you*, and **deulise yo** means *someone honored gives someone honored* or *you give someone honored*.

When you command someone to do something, it's good to use the honorific form of the verb: **Jom oseyo.**      **Juseyo!**

좀 오세요.      주세요  
Please come here.      Give (it to me)!

### **Jega chaekul deurilgeyo.**

제가 책을 드릴게요.  
I'll give you the book.

### **Chaekul juseyo.**

책을 주세요.  
(Please) give me the book.

### **Akka gimchireul deuryeosseoyo.**

아까 김치를 드렸어요.  
I just gave you the kimchi.

### **Akka gimchireul jueosseoyo.**

아까 김치를 주었어요.  
You just gave me the kimchi.

The polite present form of 주다 can be written 줘요 (**jwoyo**) or 주어요 (**ju-eyo**); both are frequently used.

Notice how the use of honorifics makes a conversation between YOU and ME quite clear even though we don't use pronouns: **Eodi gaseyo?**

어디 가세요?

Where are you going?

**Ucheguk-e gayo.**

우체국에 가요.

I'm going to the post office.

**Eodi danyeooseyo?**

어디 다녀오세요?

Where did you come from?

**Jip-eseo naon geoeyo.**

집에서 나온 거예요.

I came from home.

**Jinji japsusyeosseoyo?**

진지 잡수셨어요?

Have you eaten?

**Ajik an meogeosseoyo.**

아직 안 먹었어요.

I haven't eaten yet.

**Gim Gildong abeonim iseyo?**

김길동 아버님이세요?

Are you Kim Kildong's father?

**Aniyo. Gim Haksu abeoji eyo.**

아니요. 김학수 아버지에요.

No, I'm Kim Haksu's father.

**Mueo-seul haseyo?**

무엇을 하세요?

What do you do?

**Seonsaengnim ieyo.**

선생님이에요.  
I'm a teacher.

**Yeongeο-reul gareuchyeοyo.**

영어를 가르쳐요.  
I teach English.

**Myeongham-i isseοyo?**

명함이 있어요?  
Do you have a name card?

**Beolsseo deuriji anasseοyo?**

벌써 드리지 않았어요?  
Didn't I already give it to you?

**Gabang-eul eodi-da dueottura?**

가방을 어디다 두었더라?  
Where did I put the briefcase?



## LESSON 26

# The Word “But”

You have learned the expression **geureochiman** = *but*: **Gage e gaseoyo. Geureochiman gudu-reul an saseoyo.**

가게에 갔어요 그럴지만 구두를 안 샀어요.  
I went to the store. But I didn't buy any shoes.

If you want to link two such sentences together more closely, you can change the verb of the first to the **-ji** form and add the particle **man**: **Gage-e gajjiman, gudu-reul an sasseoyo.**

가게에 갔지만 구두를 안 샀어요.  
I went to the store, but I didn't buy any shoes.

If the verb is in the past, you have to use the past **-ji** form which ends in **-eojji** or **-ajji** (with some irregularities, just like the polite past **-eosse yo** and **-ase yo**): **Sangjeom-e gaseyo. Geureochiman, gudu-reul an sasseyo. = Sangjeom-e kajji man gudu-reul an sasseoyo.**

Here are some past **-ji** forms:

|                        |       |                          |
|------------------------|-------|--------------------------|
| <b>jabajjiman</b>      | 잡았지만  | caught but               |
| <b>dadajjiman</b>      | 닫았지만  | closed but               |
| <b>useojjiman</b>      | 웃었지만  | laughed but              |
| <b>noajjiman</b>       | 놓았지만  | put but                  |
| <b>anjeusyeojjiman</b> | 앉으셨지만 | someone honored sat but  |
| <b>sseojjiman</b>      | 썼지만   | wrote but                |
| <b>gasyeojjiman</b>    | 가셨지만  | someone honored went but |
| <b>jueojjiman</b>      | 주었지만  | gave but                 |
| <b>bwajjiman</b>       | 봤지만   | saw but                  |
| <b>haejiman</b>        | 했지만   | did but<br>didn't go but |

**kaji anajjiman**

가지 않았지만

**oji aneusyeojjiman**

오지않으셨지만

someone honored didn't  
come but

Here are some examples in sentences: **Eoje-neun ilhaejjiman, oneul-eun swieoyo.**

어제는 일했지만 오늘은 쉬어요.

Yesterday I worked but today, I am off (I rest).

**Sinmun-eul bwajjiman, geu sajin-eun mot bwasseoyo.**

신문을 봤지만 그 사진은 못 봤어요.

I read the newspaper, but I didn't see that picture.

**Saiteu-reul bwajjiman, geu sajin-eul mot bwasseoyo.**

사이트를 봤지만 그 사진을 못 봤어요.

I looked at the website, but I didn't see that picture.

**Chaek-eul ilgeojjiman, yeonghwa-neun mot bwasseoyo.**

책을 읽었지만 영화는 못봤어요.

I read the book, but I didn't get to see the movie.

**Yeonghwa-reul mot bwajjiman chaek-eul ilgeosseoyo?**

영화를 못 봤지만 책을 읽었어요.

You didn't see the movie, but you read the book?

**Jip-i jakjiman yeppeoyo.**

집이 작지만 예뻐요.

The house is small but it's cute.

**Gae-ga yeppeujiman neomu jijeoyo.**

개가 예쁘지만 너무 짹어요.

The dog is cute but he barks a lot.

**Na-neun haksaeung ijiman nae chingu-neun anieyo.**

나는 학생이지만 내친구는 아니에요.

I'm a student, but my friend isn't.

**Gimssineun Hanguk saram ijiman, Massi-neun Jungguk saram ieyo.**

김씨는 한국 사람이지만 마씨는 중국 사람이에요.

Mr. Kim is a Korean, but Mr. Ma is Chinese.

**Na-neun Ilbon-eseo wajjiman, Ilbon saram-eun anieyo.**

나는 일본에서 왔지만 일본 사람은 아니에요.

I came from Japan, but I'm not Japanese.

**Sikku-neun maneunde don-i eopseoyo.**

식구는 많은데 돈이 없어요.

I have a big family, but I haven't any money.

**Nae-ga neo-ege jun don-eul da sseokkuna.**

내가 너에게 준 돈을 다 썼구나.

I gave you money but you spent it all.

NOTE: **Sseoyo** means (1) *writes*, (2) *uses*, (3) *spends*, (4) *wears on head*. Below, **jagi** means *oneself*.

**Geuga moja-reul sseojjiman, jagi moja-ga anieosseoyo.**

그가 모자를 썼지만 자기 모자가 아니었어요.

He put on a hat but it wasn't his own.

**Pen-i eopseojjiman, chingu yeonpil-lo sseosseoyo.**

펜이 없었지만 친구 연필로 썼어요.

I didn't have a pen, but I used a friend's pencil.

**Yeonpil-lo sseojjiman, gwaen chanayo.**

연필로 썼지만 꺾찰아요.

You wrote with a pencil, but it doesn't make any difference.





Gim Gildong  
abeonim iseyo?  
Are you Kim  
Kildong's father?

Geurae, naya.  
Yes, I am.

Jeoneun gildongi hakgyo  
chingu igo, jejudoga  
gohyang immida.  
I am Kildong's old  
schoolmate from Jeju.

Eoseo wa.  
Please come in.



Jeoneun jeju eseo  
eunhaeng imwoneuro  
ilhago isseoyo.  
I am a bank officer  
in Jeju.

Mueos-eul haseyo?  
What do you do?

I chaek jom gildongi hante jeonhae  
juseyo. Ije gabwaya gess seumnida.  
Please give this book to Kildong.  
I must be on my way now.



Gomapda. Josimhae  
gageora.  
Thank you. You take  
care on the way.

## LESSON 27

# Infinitives and Favors

The infinitive is the form we get when we drop the particle **yo**: **hae** 해 = *do*, **ga** 가 = *go*, **masyeo** 마셔 = *drink*, **anja** 앉아 = *sit*, **noa** 놓아 = *put*, **ilgeo** 읽어 = *read*. But the infinitives of **iseoyo** 있어요, **eopseoyo** 없어요 and **gatayo** 같아요 are **iseo** 있어, **eopseo** 없어 and **gata** 같 아. (Some people say **-(eu)seoyo** 으세요 for **-(eu)seo** 으서, **eopsseoyo** 없어요 for **eopseoyo**, and **gateyo** for **gatayo**.) And the infinitives of honorific verbs which end in **-(u)seyo** have the ending **-(eu)seo**: **japsuseyo** 잡수세요 = *someone honored eats* but **japsuo** 잡쑤. There is also a past infinitive with the ending **-eoseo** 었어 or **-aseo** 았어 (with all the usual irregularities). The basic rule for making the infinitive from the base is this: Add **-a** if the vowel of the preceding syllable is **o**, otherwise add **-eo**. But the infinitives of vowel bases are a bit more difficult, and the rules depend on which vowel the base ends in; it is probably easiest just to learn the infinitives without worrying how they are made.

The infinitive form is used in a great many ways. It should not be confused with the English form called infinitive—the two have little or nothing in common.

One way you will hear the infinitive form is all by itself at the end of a sentence in the FAMILIAR style. This style is just like the POLITE style you have learned, except that you drop the **yo** at the end (and usually change **-e** to **-eo**):

POLITE

**Eodi-seo wasseoyo?**

어디서 왔어요?

Where are you from?

**Mueot-eul haeyo?**

무엇을 해요?

What do you do?

FAMILIAR

**Eodi-seo wasseo?**

어디서 왔어?

**Mwo hae?**

뭐해?

**Gongjang-eseo il haeyo?**

**Gongjang-eseo il hae?**

공장에서 일해요?  
Do you work at the factory?

공장에서 일해?

**Ilgop si-e meogeoyo?**

일곱시에 먹어요.  
Do you eat at 7?

**Ilgop si-e meogeo?**

일곱시에 먹어?

**Gongbu haji anayo?**

공부하지 않아요?  
Don't you study?

**Gongbu haji ana?**

공부하지 않아?

Another way to use the infinitive is in linking two verbs:

|                     |       |                     |
|---------------------|-------|---------------------|
| <b>dorayo</b>       | 돌아요   | turns               |
| <b>dorawayo</b>     | 돌아와요  | comes back, returns |
| <b>doragayo</b>     | 돌아가요  | goes back, returns  |
| <b>deureowayo</b>   | 들어와요  | comes in            |
| <b>deureokayo</b>   | 들어가요  | goes in             |
| <b>nawayo</b>       | 나와요   | comes out           |
| <b>nagayo</b>       | 나가요   | goes out            |
| <b>anjayo</b>       | 앉아요   | sits                |
| <b>anja isseoyo</b> | 앉아있어요 | is seated           |
| <b>nuwoyo</b>       | 누워요   | lies down           |
| <b>nuwo isseoyo</b> | 누워있어요 | is lying, is prone  |

With the verbs **jueoyo** = *gives* and **deuryeoyo** = *gives to someone honored*, this is the way to report a favor: **Abeoji kkeseo pyeonji-reul sseo jueosseoyo.**

아버지께서 편지를 써 주셨어요.

Father wrote the letter for me (he gave me the favor of writing the letter).

**Ajumeoni-ga aideul-hante iyagi-reul hae jusyeosseoyo.**

아주머니가 아이들한테 이야기를 해 주셨어요.

The aunt told the children a story.

**Adeul-i abeoji-ui gudu-reul dakka deuryeosseoyo.**

아들이 아버지의 구두를 닦아 드렸어요.  
The boy shined his father's shoes (for him).

The person FOR whom the favor is done is the INDIRECT OBJECT and takes the particle **hante** 한테 (or its equivalents **ege** 에게 or its honorific equivalent **kke** 께).

To ask someone for a favor you can use the infinitive **juseyo** 주세요 = (someone honored, that is YOU) *please give* or the FORMAL style command **jusipsio** 주십시오 = *please give*: **Don-eul juseyo. Doneul jusipsio.**

돈을 주세요. 돈을 주십시오.  
Please give me some money.

**Don-eul naejusipsio.**

돈을 내주십시오.  
Please (do me the favor of) pay(ing) the money.

**Naeil uri jip-e wa jusipsio.**

내일 우리 집에 와 주십시오.  
Please come to our house tomorrow.

**Jom deo japsuseyo.**

좀 더 잡수세요.  
Please eat a little more.

**Iyagi-reul hae juseyo.**

이야기를 해주세요.  
Tell us a story.

**Mannyeonpil-lo sseo juseyo.**

만년필로 써 주세요.  
Please write with a fountain pen.

**Igeo-seul bada jusipsio.**

이것을 받아 주십시오.



Please take (accept) this.

**Yeogi-e noa juseyo.**

여기에 놓아주세요.

Put it here, please.

To make a negative request you use the **-ji** 지 (or **-eusiji** 으시지) form followed by the auxiliary verb **maseyo** 마세요 = *avoid* or its FORMAL style command form **masipsio** 마십시오: **Yeongeo-ro mal haji maseyo.**

영어로 말하지 마세요.

Don't speak English.

**Geogi anjji masipsio.**

거기 앉지 마십시오.

Don't sit there.

**Yeonpil-lo sseuji maseyo.**

연필로 쓰지 마세요.

Don't write with a pencil.

**Igeo saji maseyo.**

이거 사지 마세요.

Don't buy this.

To tell someone not to do something in the familiar style, you just drop the **-seyo** from **ma**.

**Igeo saji ma.**

이거 사지 마.

Don't buy this. (familiar)

## LESSON 28

# Expressing “May” and “Must”

The infinitive plus **do** means *even though*. Sometimes this is similar to the meaning of **-jiman** = *but*.

### **Don-i eopseodo haengbok haeyo.**

돈이 없어도 행복해요.

Even though I have no money I am happy.

### **Don-i eopjiman, haengbok haeyo.**

돈이 없지만 행복해요.

I have no money, but I am happy.

Usually you use a present infinitive in front of **do** even if the meaning is past, because the sentence makes this clear.

### **Chaek-i eopseodo, hakgyo-e gasseoyo.**

책이 없어도 학교에 갔어요.

I went to school even though I didn't have my book.

### **Geu yeonghwa jaemi eopseosseodo, jip-e doragaji anasseoyo.**

그 영화 재미 없었어도 집에 돌아 가지 않았어요.

Even though the movie was no good, I didn't go home.

This construction is used in asking or giving PERMISSION. To say *may I, can I, will you let me, is it OK* to the Korean says something like *even if I do it, is it all right?* or *even though I do it, does it make any difference?* The word for “all right” is **joayo** = *is good* or **gwaen chanayo** = *makes no difference*.





Oneul i i-meileul  
bonaeya hae.  
I must send out this  
email today.

Mvoga geuri geuphae?  
What is the hurry?



Tikesi dongnagi jeon-e  
yeyak haryeogo.  
I must book the ticket before  
the tickets are sold out.

Museun tikes inde?  
Ticket to?

Guwole gaehoe doeneun daeum  
beon keipap festibeoleul boryeogo.  
I want to attend the next K-Pop  
Festival in September.



Geujeot nohchi  
deorado, daeum  
beon sipi woledo  
bol su itjanha.  
If you miss that,  
you can go and see  
the next event in  
December.

Ani andwoe – naneun  
geddae hanguke  
eopsgeodeun.  
I can't – I may not be  
in Korea then.

**Iljik wado gwaen chanayo?**

일찍 와도 괜찮아요?

Is it all right if I come early?

**Oneul bangmun haedo joayo?**

오늘 방문해도 좋아요?

Can I visit you today?

**Naeil jechul haedo gwaen chanayo.**

내일 제출해도 괜찮아요.

You can (I can) hand in the report tomorrow.

**I bang an-e gyesyeodo joayo.**

이 방안에 계셔도 좋아요.

You may stay in this room.

**Yeogi anjado gwaen chanayo.**

여기 앉아도 괜찮아요.

You can sit here.

To express OBLIGATION, you use the infinitive (or the honorific infinitive) plus -**ya haeyo** which means something like *has to, must, has got to*. The particle **ya** has a meaning something like *only if you do* and the **haeyo** means *(then) it will do*. In other words, *only if you...will it do = you have to....*

**Oneul bam iljik dorawaya haeyo.**

오늘 밤 일찍 돌아와야 해.

You have to come back early tonight.

**Yeolsimhi gongbu haeya haeyo.**

열심히 공부해야 해요.

I have to study hard (or well).

**Hakgyo-e gaya haeyo?**

학교에 가야 해요?  
Do I have to go to school?

**Don-eul naeya haeyo?**  
돈을 내야 해요?  
Do I have to pay the money?

**Na-neun i chaek-eul ilgeoya haeyo.**  
나는이 책을 읽어야 해요.  
I've got to read this book.

**Yeogi anjaya haeyo?**  
여기 앉아야 해요?  
Do I have to sit here?

**Eoje mueot-eul haeya haesseoyo?**  
어제 무엇을 해야 했어요?  
What did I have to do yesterday?

**Sae pen-eul saya haeyo.**  
새 펜을 사야 해요.  
I have to buy a new pen.

**Jigeum je-ga mueo-seul haeya haeyo?**  
지금 제가 무엇을 해야 해요?  
What do I have to do now?

To deny obligation—you *don't have to*, *you need not*—you say something like *it's all right even if you don't*: **-ji anado joa yo** or **-ji anado gwaen chanayo, -ji anado dweyo.**

**Iljjik doraoji anado gwaen chanayo.**  
일찍 돌아 오지 않아도 괜찮아요.  
You don't have to come back early.

**Hakgyo-e angado dweyo.**

학교에 안가도 돼요.

You don't have to go to school.

**I chaek-eul boji anado gwaen chanayo.**

이 책을 보지 않아도 괜찮아요.

I don't have to read this book.

**Geogi anjji anado dweyo.**

거기 앉지 않아도 돼요.

You don't have to sit there. (It's OK if you don't sit there.) **Sae pen-eul saji anado dweyo.**

새 펜을 사지 않아도 돼요.

You don't have to buy a new pen.

**Geu chaek-eun jigeum ilji anado dweyo.**

그 책은지금 읽지 않아도 돼요.

That book doesn't have to be read now.

**Geu imeil-eun jigeum sseuji anado dwejiman i imeil-eun kkok sseoya haeyo.**

그 이메일은 지금 쓰지 않아도 되지만 이메일은 꼭 써야 해요.

That email doesn't have to be written now, but this email I have to write for sure (**kkok**).





## LESSON 29

**Helping Verbs** You have learned that the verbs **joayo** = *gives* and **deuryeoyo** = *gives to someone honored* have special meanings following an infinitive: *does the favor of doing, does FOR someone*.

Verbs which have special meanings of this sort when used with other verbs are called **HELPING VERBS**. Most helping verbs are used in combination with the infinitive form, but some are used with other forms.

The verb **bwayo** ordinarily means *looks, sees, reads* but as a helping verb it means *tries doing*—NOT *tries TO do* but *tries DOING*, that is, *samples the act to see what it's like*: **Hangungmal-lo imeil-eul sseo bwasseoyo.**

한국말로 이메일을 써 봤어요.  
I tried writing an email in Korean.

**Hanguk beullogeu-reul ilgeo bwasseoyo.**

한국 블로그를 읽어 봤어요.  
I tried reading a Korean blog.

**Cheoncheonhi malhae bwajjiman, geu saram-i ihae haji mot haesseoyo.**

천천히 말해 봤지만 그 사람이 이해하지 못했어요.  
I tried talking slowly, but he couldn't understand me.

**Hanguk eumsik jom deusyeo boseyo.**

한국 음식 좀 드셔 보세요.  
Try eating a little Korean food.

The constructions **-e wayo** 에 와요 and **-e gayo** 에 가요 mean, respectively, *to come somewhere* and *to go somewhere*. You can remove the 요 and add the helping verb 보다 at the end to talk about personal experiences: **Ilbon-e ga bosyeosseoyo?**

일본에 가 보셨어요?  
Have you been to Japan?

**Seongjin-a! Iri wa bwa.**

성진아! 이리 와 봐.

Seongjin! Come here. (said to a child) The verb **beoryeoyo** means *throws away, discards*.

As a helping verb it means *does something completely, for good; puts an end to something*.

It's very often used in the phrases 잊어 버렸어요 (**ijeo beoryeosseoyo**, *forgot*) and 잃어 버렸어요 (**ilheo beoryeosseoyo**, *lost*).

**Yeolsoe-reul ireo beoryeosseoyo.**

열쇠를 잃어 버렸어요.

I lost the key.

**Uri jipe-gaega isseojjiman, dudal jeon-e jugeo beoryeosseoyo.**

우리 집에 개가 있었지만 두 달 전에 죽어 버렸어요.

We had a dog at our house, but it died two months ago.

**Don-eul da sseo beoryeosseoyo?**

돈을 다 써버렸어요?

Did you spend all the money?

**Jega sukjereul ggambbak ijeo beoryeosseoyo.**

제가 숙제를 깜빡 잊어 버렸어요.

I completely forgot (about) the homework.

**Sukjereul haetneunde hakkyo-e gal ddae ilheo beoryeosseoyo.**

숙제를 했는데 학교에 갈 때 잃어 버렸어요.

I did my homework, but lost it while on the way to school.

The verb **dueoyo** means *puts away (for a long time), gets out of the way, stores*:

**Bom-i wasseoyo. Gyeoul oseul eodi-da dwoyo?**

봄이 왔어요. 겨울옷을 어디다 뒹요?

Spring has come; where do we put the winter clothes?

**Uri-neun oseul i jang an-e dueosseoyo.**

우리는 옷을 이 장 안에 두었어요.

We kept clothes in this closet.

**Geu japji-reul doseogwan-e dueosseoyo.**

그 잡지를 도서관에 두었어요.

They put those magazines in the library.

As a helping verb, **dueoyo** means *gets something done that has to be done, does something up*: **Eomeoni-ga oseul ppara dusyeosseoyo.**

어머니가 옷을 빨아 두셨어요.

Mother washed the clothes, got the laundry done.

**Geu daeum jip an-eul cheongso hasyeosseoyo.**

그 다음 집 안을 청소 하셨어요.

Then, (next) she cleaned (inside) the house.

**Geurigo naseo harabeoji-kke pyeonji-reul sseusyeossoyo.**

그리고 나서 할아버지께 편지를 쓰셨어요.

After that she wrote grandfather a letter.

The verb **noayo** means *puts aside (for later use), lays something somewhere (with the expectation of using it again later)*. As a helping verb it means something like *does for later; gets something done (so that it will be ready for later use)*: **Naeil gongbu-reul eojet bam-e hae nwaseoyo.**

내일 공부를 어젯밤에 해 났어요.

I did tomorrow's lesson (studying) last night.

**Geum yoil-kkaji i chaek-eul ilgeo noeuseyo.**

금요일까지 이 책을 읽어 놓으세요.

Please read this book by Friday.

**Myeot si-e eumsik junbi hae noeulkkayo?**

몇시에 음식 준비 해 놓을까요?

What time should you get the meal ready?

**Sae gongchaek-eul sa noasseoyo.**

새 공책을 사 놓았어요.

I bought a new notebook (to use).

**Pyo-reul jigeum sa noeulkkayo?**

표를 지금 사 놓을까요?

Can we buy the tickets now (in advance)?

## LESSON 30

**The -go Verb Form** A very common verb form is the gerund or **-go** form. This has a number of uses and we can give it the tag translations of *doing* or *does and, is and*. The form is made by adding **-go** to the verb base in much the same way that **-ji** is added.

| MEANING        | BASE          | -JI FORM        | -KO FORM                    |
|----------------|---------------|-----------------|-----------------------------|
| catches        | <b>jab-</b>   | <b>japji</b>    | <b>japgo</b>                |
| is high        | <b>nop-</b>   | <b>nopji</b>    | <b>nopgo</b>                |
| is nonexistent | <b>eops-</b>  | <b>eopji</b>    | <b>eopgo</b>                |
| closes         | <b>dad-</b>   | <b>dajji</b>    | <b>dakko</b>                |
| is like        | <b>gat-</b>   | <b>gajji</b>    | <b>gakko</b>                |
| laughs         | <b>us-</b>    | <b>ujji</b>     | <b>ukko</b>                 |
| exists         | <b>iss-</b>   | <b>ijji</b>     | <b>ikko</b>                 |
| finds          | <b>chaj-</b>  | <b>chajji</b>   | <b>chakko</b>               |
| washes         | <b>ssich-</b> | <b>ssijji</b>   | <b>ssikko</b>               |
| reads          | <b>ilg-</b>   | <b>iljji</b>    | <b>ilkko</b> or <b>ikko</b> |
| loses          | <b>ilh-</b>   | <b>ilchi</b>    | <b>ilko</b>                 |
| licks          | <b>halt-</b>  | <b>haljji</b>   | <b>halkko</b>               |
| steps on       | <b>balb-</b>  | <b>baljji</b>   | <b>balkko</b>               |
| chants         | <b>eulp-</b>  | <b>euljji</b>   | <b>eulkko</b>               |
| puts           | <b>noh-</b>   | <b>nochi</b>    | <b>noko</b>                 |
| eats           | <b>meok-</b>  | <b>meokji</b>   | <b>meokko</b>               |
| cuts           | <b>kkakk-</b> | <b>kkakji</b>   | <b>kkakko</b>               |
| shampoos       | <b>gam-</b>   | <b>kamjji</b>   | <b>kamkko</b>               |
| is young       | <b>jeolm-</b> | <b>jeomjji</b>  | <b>jeomkko</b>              |
| wears on feet  | <b>sin-</b>   | <b>sinjji</b>   | <b>sinkko</b>               |
| sits           | <b>anj-</b>   | <b>anjji</b>    | <b>ankko</b>                |
| breaks         | <b>bureo-</b> | <b>bureoji</b>  | <b>bureojigo</b>            |
| equals, is     | <b>(i)-</b>   | <b>iji, -ji</b> | <b>igo, -go</b>             |

|                      |                         |                            |                            |
|----------------------|-------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|
| rests<br>(honorific) | <b>swi-<br/>-(eu)si</b> | <b>swiji<br/>-(eu)siji</b> | <b>swigo<br/>-(eu)sigo</b> |
| pays                 | <b>nae-</b>             | <b>naeji</b>               | <b>naego</b>               |
| writes               | <b>sseu-</b>            | <b>sseuji</b>              | <b>sseugo</b>              |
| goes                 | <b>ga-</b>              | <b>gaji</b>                | <b>gago</b>                |
| gives                | <b>ju-</b>              | <b>juji</b>                | <b>jugo</b>                |
| sees                 | <b>bo-</b>              | <b>boji</b>                | <b>bogo</b>                |
| does                 | <b>ha-</b>              | <b>haji</b>                | <b>hago</b>                |

One use of the gerund to mean *doing* is with the auxiliary **isseoyo** *is* or **geseyo** *someone honored is*: **Abeoji-ga mun-eul dakko isseoyo.**

아버지가 문을 닫고 있어요.

Father is shutting the door.

**Aegi-ga ukko isseosseoyo.**

애기가 웃고 있었어요.

The baby was laughing.

**Museun chaek-eul ilkho geseyo?**

무슨 책을 읽고 계세요?

What book are you reading?

**Geu ttae hyuga yeosseoyo.**

그 때 휴가였어요.

I was off (resting) that day.

**Gongbu-reul hago geseyo?**

공부를 하고 계세요?

Are you doing your lesson?

**Munja-reul sseugo isseoyo.**

문자를 쓰고 있어요.

I'm writing a text message.

Notice that some verbs have slightly different meanings in the *is doing* form:

|                       |        |                                              |
|-----------------------|--------|----------------------------------------------|
| <b>ibeoyo</b>         | 입어요    | puts on (clothes), wears                     |
| <b>ipko isseoyo</b>   | 입고있어요  | is wearing                                   |
| <b>sseoyo</b>         | 써요     | puts on (hat), wears (hat)                   |
| <b>sseugo isseoyo</b> | 쓰고 있어요 | is wearing (hat)                             |
| <b>sineoyo</b>        | 신어요    | puts on (shoes, socks), wears (shoes, socks) |
| <b>sinkko issoeyo</b> | 신고있어요  | is wearing (shoes, socks)                    |

**Jeoneun choroksaek seuweteoreul ipgo isseoyo.**

저는 초록색 스웨터를 입고 있어요.

I'm wearing a green sweater.

The second use of the gerund is in the meaning *does and (then)* or *is and (also)*:

**O-seul ipkko, gudu-reul sinkko, moja-reul sseoyo.**

옷을 입고, 구두를 신고 모자를 써요.

I put on clothes, shoes, and hat.

**Igeot-seun nae moja igo, jeogeot-seun adeul moja eyo.**

이것은 내 모자이고 저것은 아들 모자에요

This is my hat and that is my son's.



You could say these ideas in short, abrupt sentences using the connective word

**geurigo = does and, is and: Os-eul ipkko: Geurigo, gudu-reul sineoyo: Geurigo moja-reul sseoyo. Igeot-eun nae moja eyo. Geurigo, geu geot-eun adeul moja eyo.**

To say *did and then; was and (also)* you can use the ordinary gerund, letting the final past form carry the meaning throughout: **Os-eul ipko, gudu-reul sinkko, moja-reul ssesseoyo.**

옷을 입고 ,구두를 신고 모자를 썼어요

I put on my clothes, my shoes and my hat.

**Igeot-eun nae moja igo, jeogeot-eun adeul moja yeosseoyo.**

이것은 내 모자이고, 저것은 아들 모자였어요.

This was my hat, and, that was my son's.

Or, you can use a special past gerund (**-eokko, -akko**, with the usual irregularities of the infinitive **-eo, -a** and the past **-eoss-, -ass-**): **Os-eul ibeokko gudu-reul sineokko, moja-reul ssesseoyo.**

옷을 입었고 구두를 신었고 모자를 썼어요.

I was wearing clothes, shoes, and a hat.

**Igeos-eun nae moja-yeokko, geu geos-eun adeul moja-yeosseoyo.**

이것은 내 모자였고, 그것은 아들 모자였어요.

This was my hat and that was my son's hat.



## LESSON 31

**Wants and Likes** To say *I want to ...* or *I would like to ...* use the gerund form of the verb followed by the helping word **sipeoyo** = *is desired*:  
**Geu yeonghwa-reul bogo sipeoyo.**

그 영화를 보고 싶어요.  
I want to see that movie.

**Dambae-reul sago sipeoyo.**  
담배를 사고 싶어요.  
I want to buy some cigarettes.

**Dambae-reul pigo sipeoyo.**  
담배를 피고 싶어요.  
I want to smoke (cigarettes).

**Jigeum meokko sipeoyo!**  
지금 먹고 싶어요.  
I want to eat right now!

**Gidarigo sipji anayo.**  
기다리고 싶지 않아요.  
I don't want to wait.

**Iyaegi-reul hae deurigo sipeoyo.**  
이야기를 해드리고 싶어요.  
I want to tell you a story.

**Oneul pyo-reul sa noko sipeoyo.**  
오늘 표를 사놓고 싶어요.  
I want to buy the tickets today (and keep them).

**Gimssi-hante mal hago sipeoyo.**

김씨한테 말하고 싶어요.

I want to speak to Mr. Kim.

**Jip-e gago sipeoyo.**

집에 가고 싶어요.

I want to go home.

**Na-neun Hanguk-e ikko sipeoyo.**

나는 한국에 있고 싶어요.

I want to stay in Korea.

**Ilbon-e doragago sipji anayo.**

일본에 돌아가고 싶지 않아요.

I don't want to go back to Japan.

But to say someone other than yourself *wants to* you usually use **sipeohaeyo** instead of **sipeoyo**. You can use **sipeohaeyo** to mean *I want to* but it's rather strong like *I'm longing to*.

To say *someone likes something* you use the expression **joahaseyo** (**joahaseyo** if you're talking to the person who likes the thing or **joahaeyo** if you're talking about something you like): **Geu yeonghwa joasseoyo?**

그 영화 좋았어요?

Did you like that movie?

**Kkoch-eul joahaseyo?**

꽃을 좋아하세요?

Do you like the flowers?

**Agideul-eun uyu-reul joahaeyo.**

아기들은 우유를 좋아해요.

Babies like milk.

**Goyangi-do uyu-reul joahaji anayo?**

고양이도 우유를 좋아하지 않아요?  
Don't cats like milk, too?

To say *I like something* you can use the above expression, or you can use a somewhat weaker (and more sophisticated) expression which means something like *as for me, the thing is liked*: **Na-neun geu yeonghwa-ga joayo.**

나는 그 영화가 좋아요.  
I like that movie.

**Na-neun yeogi-ga joayo.**

나는 여기가 좋아요.  
I like this place.

The verb **joayo** has two meanings: (1) *is good*, (2) *is liked*.

**Na-neun i eumsiki joayo.**

나는 이 음식이 좋아요.  
I like this food.

**Na-neun Ilbon eul joahaetsseoyo.**

나는 일본을 좋아했어요.  
I liked Japan.

The expression **joahaeyo** only means *likes*.

Notice that the **THING** you like takes the particle **i/ga** with the expression **joayo**; but the particle **eul/reul** is used with **joahaseyo**.

To say *I like TO DO something* you have to use a special form of the verb in front of **joayo** or **joahaeyo**. This is the **-gi** form. The ending is added to the bases just like the gerund **(-go)** form:



**Na-neun yeonghwa bogi-reul joahaeyo.**

나는 영화 보기를 좋아해요.

I like to see movies.

**Aideul-eun seonmul batgi-reul joahaeyo.**

아이들은 선물 받기를 좋아해요.

The children like to get presents.

**Harabeoji-kkeseo yeohaeng-eul joahasyeosseoyo.**

할아버지께서 여행을 좋아 하셨어요.

My grandfather used to like making trips.

**Jungguk eumsik jeom-eseo meokgireul joahaeyo?**

중국 음식점에서 먹기를 좋아하세요?

Do you like to eat in Chinese restaurants?

Notice that *I WOULD LIKE to* is not the same as *I LIKE to*.

*I WOULD like to* means *I WANT to* = **-go sipeoyo**.

*I LIKE to* means *it is pleasant for me to* = **-gi joahaeyo**.

You may be puzzled why you don't hear the **h** in **joayo** and **noayo**. **H** between voiced sounds frequently disappears, and in verb forms like these it usually isn't pronounced at all. You may even hear a **w**—like sound between the **o** and **a** and want to write the words **joayo** and **noayo**.

## LESSON 32

# Infinitive + *seo* = “And So”

When the particle **seo** follows the infinitive, the meaning is something like *does and so, is and so* or just *does and, is and*: **Don-i eopseoseo mot gayo.**

돈이 없어서 못가요.

I have no money so I can't go.

This could be broken up into two shorter sentences with the connective expression **geuraeseo**: **Don-i eopseoyo. Geuraeseo mot gayo.**

돈이 없어요. 그래서 못가요.

I don't have money. So I can't go.

For the past—*did and so, was and so*—you usually just use the plain infinitive plus **seo**, since the final verb shows that the meaning is past. There is a past infinitive (**-eosseo, -asseo** etc.) which can be used to make the pastness explicit\*: **Bae-ga gopasseo bap meogeureo gasseoyo.**

배가 고파서 밥 먹으러 갔어요.

I was hungry so I went into the restaurant.

\*However, this is almost never used.

(**Bae** = *stomach*. **Bae gopayo** = *is hungry*. The base of **gopayo** is **gopeu-**.) **Mok-i mallaseo mul-eul masyoesseoyo.**

목이 말라서 물을 마셨어요.

I was thirsty so I drank some water.

(**Mok** = *throat*, **Mallayo** = *gets dry, is dry*. *Drinks* is either **meogeoyo** or **masyeoyo**; the base of **masyeoyo** is **masi-**.) Here are some more examples: **Hanguk yeoksa-reul gongbu hago sipeoseo Seoul Daehak-e danigo isseoyo.**

한국 역사를 공부하고 싶어서 서울 대학에 다니고 있어요.

I want to study Korea's history, so I am going to Seoul University.

(**Danyeoyo** = *goes regularly, goes back and forth, keeps going*. Base is **dani-**.)

**Jigeum jip-e gaya haeseo taeksi-reul japko isseoyo.**

지금집에 가야 해서 택시를 잡고 있어요.

I have to go home now, so I am looking for a taxi.

**Kkoch-eul joahaeseo nal-mada gongwon-e sanchaekgayo.**

꽃을 좋아해서 날마다 공원에 산책가요.

I like flowers, so I take a walk in the park every day.

**Hakgyo-ga meoreoseo georeogal su eopseoyo.**

학교가 멀어서 걸어갈 수 없어요.

My school is far away so I can't walk.

**Hakgyo-ga jip-eseo gakkawoseo georeo danyeoyo.**

학교가 집에서 가까워서 걸어 다녀요.

My school is near (from) the house, so I can walk.

(**Georeogayo** = *walks, goes on foot*. **Georeowayo** = *walks, comes on foot*.)

**Gongwon-i gakkapji anaseo, jeoncheol-lo gaya haeyo.**

공원이 가깝지 않아서 전철로 가야해요.

The park isn't near, so I have to go by subway.

**Uri jip-i jeonggeojang-eseo meolji anaseo, georeowado dweyo.**

우리집이 정거장에서 멀지 않아서 걸어와도 되요.

Our house isn't far from the station, so I can come from there on foot.

The infinitive plus **seo** means *does* and in expressions using verbs of motion like *goes* and *does* or *comes* and *does*: **Gage-e gaseo gwail-eul sasseoyo.**

가게에 가서 과일을 샀어요.

He went to the store and bought some fruit.

**Oneul achim-e doseogwan-e gaseo, chaek-eul billil geo eyo.**

오늘 아침에 도서관에 가서, 책을 빌릴 거예요.

This morning I'm going to the library (building) and will borrow a book.

## LESSON 33

# Some Peculiar Verb Types

Verb bases with a basic form ending in **p** change that form to a **u** or **w** (ㅍ changes to ㅍ) in certain forms.

|                                              |        |                              |
|----------------------------------------------|--------|------------------------------|
| <b>doum</b>                                  | 도움     | to help                      |
| <b>dowayo</b>                                | 도와요    | helps                        |
| <b>dopji anayo</b>                           | 돕지 않아요 | doesn't help                 |
| <b>dopgo isseoyo</b>                         | 돕고 있어요 | is helping                   |
| <b>douseyo</b>                               | 도우세요   | (someone honored) helps      |
| <b>dopko geseyo</b> or <b>dousigo geseyo</b> |        | (someone honored) is helping |

돕고 계세요 OR 도우시고 계세요

Here are some of these verbs:

|                    |       |                       |
|--------------------|-------|-----------------------|
| <b>nuwoyo</b>      | 누워요   | lies down             |
| <b>swiwoyo</b>     | 쉬워요   | is easy               |
| <b>eoryeowoyo</b>  | 어려워요  | is difficult          |
| <b>chuwoyo</b>     | 추워요   | is cold               |
| <b>kakkawoyo</b>   | 가까워요  | is near               |
| <b>areumdawoyo</b> | 아름다워요 | is beautiful          |
| <b>yeppeoyo</b>    | 예뻐요   | is pretty             |
| <b>deowoyo</b>     | 더워요   | is hot                |
| <b>maewoyo</b>     | 매워요   | is hot-tasting, spicy |
| <b>bangawoyo</b>   | 반가워요  | is glad to meet you   |
| <b>gomawoyo</b>    | 고마워요  | is grateful           |

Most of these verbs correspond to English adjectives; they mean *IS something* rather than *DOES something*.

Some verbs ending with ㅍ (pronounced **t** at the end of a syllable) change that ending to ㅍ (l) in certain forms

|                                                                        |                              |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| <b>georeo-</b><br>걸어-                                                  | to walk                      |
| <b>georeoyo</b><br>걸어요                                                 | walks                        |
| <b>geojji anayo</b><br>걸지 않아요                                          | doesn't walk                 |
| <b>geokko isseoyo</b><br>걸고 있어요                                        | is walking                   |
| <b>georeuseyo</b><br>걸으세요                                              | (someone honored) walks      |
| <b>geokko geseyo</b> or <b>georeusigo geseyo</b><br>걸고 계세요 OR 걸으시고 계세요 | (someone honored) is walking |

| BASE      | CONSONANT BASE                   |                                   |
|-----------|----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
|           | <b>geor-</b> 걸 to <i>walk</i>    | <b>deur-</b> 들 to <i>listen</i>   |
| PRESENT   | <b>georeoyo</b> 걸어요              | <b>deureoyo</b> 들어요               |
| PAST      | <b>georeo-sseoyo</b> 걸었어요        | <b>deureosseoyo</b> 들었어요          |
| HON.      | <b>georeuseyo</b> 걸으세요           | <b>deureoseyo</b> 들으세요            |
| HON. PAST | <b>georeusye-sseoyo</b><br>걸으셨어요 | <b>deureusyeo-sseoyo</b><br>들으셨어요 |
| -기        | <b>geojji</b> 걸지                 | <b>deutchi</b> 듣지                 |
| GERUND    | <b>geokko</b> 걷고                 | <b>deutkko</b> 듣고                 |

Here are some consonant bases ending in **r**:

|                                 |                                                       |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>mur-</b> = to inquire        | <b>mureoyo, mutji anayo, mukko</b><br>물어요, 묻지 않아요, 묻고 |
| <b>sir-</b> = to be loaded with | <b>sireoyo, sijji anayo, sikko</b><br>실어요, 실지 않아요, 실고 |
| <b>kkaedar-</b> = realize       | <b>kkaedarayo, kkaedajji anayo, kkaedakko</b>         |



깨달아요, 깨닫지 않아요, 깨닫고

**Gildong i-ga abeoji sori-reul deukko dalyeo wasseoyo.**

길동이가 아버지 소리를 듣고 달려 왔어요.

Kildong heard his father's voice and came running.

**Geugeo-seul kkaedajji mot haesseoyo.**

그것을 깨닫지 못했어요.

I hadn't realized that.

**Nugu-hante deureosseoyo?**

누구한테 들었어요?

Who did you find that out from?

**Dowa juseyo.**

도와 주세요

Help me.

**Nal-i neomu deowoseo jago sipeoyo.**

날이 너무 더워서 자고 싶어요.

The weather (day) is too warm, so I want to sleep. The weather is SO warm I want to sleep.

**Neomu chuwoseo koteu-reul ibeoya haeyo.**

너무 추워서 코트를 입어야 해요.

The weather is so cold. You have to wear an overcoat.

**Hangungmal-i swipji anayo.**

한국말이 쉽지 않아요.

Korean isn't easy.

**Yeongeodo eoryeowoyo.**

영어도 어려워요.

English is difficult, too.

**I eumsik-i neomu maewo seo, mot meok gesseoyo.**

이 음식이 너무 매워서, 못 먹겠어요.

This food is so hot-tasting, I can't eat it.



**Mannaseo, cham bangawoyo.**

만나서 참 반가워요.

I am very happy to meet you.

**Gimssi-hante muleosseoyo.**

김씨한테 물었어요.

I asked Mr. Kim.

**Botongeneun hakkyoe geodji anayo.**

보통에는 학교에 걸지 않아요.

I don't normally walk to school.

## LESSON 34

# The Modifiers *-eun* and *-n*

In English we have expressions like *the man WHO came yesterday* or *the man WHO came yesterday, the man WHO I saw yesterday* or *the man WHO(M) I saw yesterday*. These are called relative clauses and usually contain a relative pronoun—*who, which, that, where*—though this is sometimes omitted: *the man I saw yesterday*.

In the equivalent Korean expression, there is no relative pronoun, and the relative clause goes in front of the noun it modifies; you say something like *the came man, the seen*. The verb in these modifying constructions appears in a special form we shall call the MODIFIER form.

The past tense modifier form has the ending **-eun** after a consonant base, **-n** after a vowel base: **anjeun saram** 앉은 사람 the man who sat down **on saram** 온 사람 the man who came The meaning of the modifier form depends on whether the Korean verb corresponds to an English verb or an English adjective; in other words, whether the verb means DOES *something* or IS *something*. The meaning of the modifier form with PROCESS verbs (*does something*) is *...that has done* or *...that someone has done*: **bon saram** = *the man that saw* or *the man that someone saw*.

To make it clear which of these two meanings is involved you have to give the verb either a subject or an object: **Gimssi-reul bon saram**.

김씨를 본 사람.

The man who saw Mr. Kim.

### **Gimssi-reul bon saram.**

김씨를 본 사람.

The man who(m) Mr. Kim saw.

Then you can take the whole expression and make it the subject, or the object of a larger sentence, by putting an appropriate particle after the noun: **Gimssi-reul bon saram-i nae chingu eyo**.

김씨를 본 사람이 내 친구예요.

The man Mr. Kim saw is my friend. / The man who saw Mr. Kim is my friend.

**Gimssi-reul bon saram-eul na-do bwasseoyo.**

김씨를 본 사람을 나도 봤어요.

I too saw the man Mr. Kim saw.

**Gimssi-reul bon saram-i na-reul bwasseoyo.**

김씨를 본 사람이 나를 봤어요.

The man who saw Mr. Kim saw me too.

**Gimssi-reul bon saram-hante don-eul badasseoyo.**

김씨를 본 사람한테 돈을 받았어요.

Mr. Kim got money from the man he saw. (Also could mean: I got money from the man Mr. Kim saw.) **Gimssi-reul bon saram-hante (Gimssi-ga) don-eul badasseoyo.**

김씨를 본 사람한테 (김씨가) 돈을 받았어요.

Mr. Kim got money from the man who saw him.

Compare the following sets of sentences: **Geu saram-i doseogwan-eseo chaek-uel billyeosseoyo.**

그 사람이 도서관에서 책을 빌렸어요.

That person borrowed a book from the library.

**Doseogwan-eseo chaek-eul billin saram-i nugu eyo?**

도서관에서 책을 빌린 사람이 누구예요?

Who was the person who borrowed a book from the library?

**Geu saram-i doseogwan-eseo billin chaek-i museun chaek ieyo?**

그 사람이 도서관에서 빌린 책이 무슨 책이에요?

What was the book that person borrowed from the library?

**Geu namjaga mun-eul dadasseoyo.**

그 남자가 문을 닫았어요.

The man closed the door.

You can see that these essentially correspond to English adjectives.

|                       |        |                                           |
|-----------------------|--------|-------------------------------------------|
| <b>keun jip</b>       | 큰 집    | a house that is big = a big house         |
| <b>meon dosi</b>      | 먼 도시   | a city that is far away = a far-away city |
| <b>gakkaun hakgyo</b> | 가까운 학교 | a school that is nearby = a nearby school |
| <b>jeolmeun saram</b> | 젊은 사람  | a person who is young = a young person    |
| <b>moksa in bun</b>   | 목사인 분  | a(n honored) man who is a preacher        |
| <b>gin gil</b>        | 긴 길    | a road that is long = a long road         |
| <b>jjalbeun gil</b>   | 짧은 길   | a road that is short = a short road       |
| <b>ppalgan moja</b>   | 빨간 모자  | a hat that is red = a red hat             |
| <b>hin ot</b>         | 흰 옷    | clothes that are white = white clothes    |
| <b>geomeun gudu</b>   | 검은 구두  | black shoes                               |
| <b>pureun haneul</b>  | 푸른 하늘  | blue sky                                  |
| <b>joeun nal</b>      | 좋은 날   | nice day, nice weather                    |
| <b>nappeun nalssi</b> | 나쁜 날씨  | bad weather                               |
| <b>nopeun san</b>     | 높은 산   | high mountains                            |
| <b>najeun eondeok</b> | 낮은 언덕  | a low hill                                |
| <b>chuun bam</b>      | 추운 밤   | a cold night                              |
| <b>jageun ai</b>      | 작은 아이  | a small child                             |

## LESSON 35

**The Verb Modifier *-neun*** **Bwayo** means either *looks at, sees* or *reads*. (*Sees a person* is often translated as **mannayo** = *meets*.) But to say *the man who is reading* or *the book that the man is reading* you can't use **bon** because **bon saram** means *the man who has read* and **bon chaek** means *the book someone has read*.

Instead, there is a special form, the PROGRESSIVE modifier, used only with process verbs (DOES *something*). This form is made by adding the ending **-neun** to the verb base. (Various sound changes take place automatically when you attach the ending to a consonant base.) So we have sentences like: **Chaek-eul ilkko inneun saram-i nugu eyo?**

책을 읽고 있는 사람이 누구예요?

Who is the man (who is) reading the book?

**Chaek bogo inneun saram mannan jeok isseoyo?**

책 보고 있는 사람 만난 적 있어요?

Have you met the man who is reading the book? Did you see a man reading a book?

**Geu saram-i boneun chaek-i museun chaek ieyo?**

그 사람이 보는 책이 무슨 책이에요?

What is the book he is reading?

**Geu saram-i boneun chaek na-do bwasseoyo.**

그 사람이 보는 책 나도 봤어요.

I too have read the book he is reading.

Banggeum doseogwan-eseo chaek-eul billin saram-i nugu eyo?  
Who was the person who borrowed the book from the library just now?

Wae geureoseyo?  
Why do you need to know?

Haendeu poneul juwotneunde; geu sarami nohko gan geot gatayo—nae yeopjari-e anjass eotgeodeunyo.  
I picked up a cellphone; I believe he is the one who left it—he was sitting next to me.

Okei, keompyuteo eseo chaja bopsida.  
OK, let me look into the system.

Gamsa hamnida.  
Thank you.

Nae saenggak-e geu saram-eun ajik doseogwane itneun geot gatayo. Lebel 5 keompyuteoreul sayonghago itgunyo.  
I think he is still in the library. He is using a computer terminal on Level 5.

For some verbs *does* is a better translation than *is doing*: **Satang-eul johahaneun yeohaksaeng.**

사탕을 좋아하는 여학생.

A girl who likes candy.

**Jipe gago sipeohaneun ai.**

집에 가고 싶어하는 아이.

The child who wants to go home.

Notice that the **-neun** modifier form is not used with DESCRIPTION verbs (*is something*)—these have only the **-eun** form. This is why the **-eun** modifier comes out with two different translations: *which* HAS DONE for process verbs and *which* IS for description verbs. You will sometimes be in doubt whether a particular verb is a process or a description verb; but the English translation usually tells you.

**Isseoyo** and **eopseoyo** are a bit strange; they sometimes behave like description verbs, sometimes like process verbs. The forms **isseun** and **eopseun** are rare, however: one usually hears only **inneun** ...*that exists, that someone has* and **oemneun** ...*that is nonexistent, that someone doesn't have*.

Here is a list of some typical verb bases with their modifier forms:

#### I. CONSONANT BASES

| MEANING        | BASE              | -EUN                     | -NEUN                |
|----------------|-------------------|--------------------------|----------------------|
| catches        | <b>jab-</b><br>잡  | <b>jabeun</b><br>잡은      | <b>jamneun</b><br>잡는 |
| is high        | <b>nop-</b><br>높  | <b>nopeun</b><br>높은      | —                    |
| is nonexistent | <b>eops-</b><br>없 | <b>(eopseun)</b><br>(없은) | <b>eomneun</b><br>없는 |
| closes         | <b>dad</b><br>닫   | <b>dadeun</b><br>닫은      | <b>danneun</b><br>닫는 |
| is like        | <b>gat-</b>       | <b>gateun</b>            | —                    |



|               |                        |                           |                        |
|---------------|------------------------|---------------------------|------------------------|
| laughs        | 갈<br><b>us-</b>        | 같은<br><b>useun</b>        | <b>uneun</b>           |
| exists        | 웃<br><b>iss-</b>       | 웃은<br><b>(isseun)</b>     | 웃는<br><b>inneun</b>    |
| finds         | 있<br><b>chaj</b>       | 있은<br><b>chajeun</b>      | 있는<br><b>channeun</b>  |
| washes        | 찾<br><b>ssis-</b>      | 찾은<br><b>ssiseun</b>      | 찾는<br><b>ssinneun</b>  |
| reads         | 씻<br><b>ilk-</b>       | 씻은<br><b>ilgeun</b>       | 씻는<br><b>ilneun</b>    |
| loses         | 잃<br><b>ilh-</b>       | 잃은<br><b>ireun</b>        | 잃는<br><b>irneun</b>    |
| licks         | 舐<br><b>halt-</b>      | 舐은<br><b>halteun</b>      | 舐는<br><b>halleun</b>   |
| steps on      | 밟<br><b>balb-</b>      | 밟은<br><b>balbeun</b>      | 밟는<br><b>bamneun</b>   |
| puts          | 놓<br><b>noh-</b>       | 놓은<br><b>noeun</b>        | 놓는<br><b>nonneun</b>   |
| eats          | 먹<br><b>meok-</b>      | 먹은<br><b>meogeun</b>      | 먹는<br><b>meongneun</b> |
| cuts          | 깎<br><b>kkakk-</b>     | 깎은<br><b>kkakkeun</b>     | 깎는<br><b>kkangneun</b> |
| shampoos      | 감<br><b>gam-</b>       | 감은<br><b>gameun</b>       | 감는<br><b>gamneun</b>   |
| is young      | 젊<br><b>jeolm-</b>     | 젊은<br><b>jolmeun</b>      | -                      |
| wears on feet | 신<br><b>sin-</b>       | 신은<br><b>sineun</b>       | 신는<br><b>sinneun</b>   |
| sits          | 앉<br><b>anj-</b>       | 앉은<br><b>anjeun</b>       | 앉는<br><b>anneun</b>    |
| breaks        | 부러진<br><b>breojin-</b> | 부러지는<br><b>breojineun</b> | 부러진<br><b>breojin</b>  |

## II. VOWEL BASES

---

|             |                |                 |                    |
|-------------|----------------|-----------------|--------------------|
| is, equals  | <b>(i)-</b>    | <b>(i)-n</b>    | –                  |
| honorific   | <b>-(eu)si</b> | <b>-(eu)sin</b> | <b>-(eu)sineun</b> |
|             | 시              | 신               | 시는                 |
| rests       | <b>swi-</b>    | <b>swin</b>     | <b>swineun</b>     |
|             | 쉬              | 쉰               | 쉬는                 |
| becomes     | <b>dwe-</b>    | <b>dwen</b>     | <b>dweneun</b>     |
|             | 되              | 뎨               | 되는                 |
| pays        | <b>nae-</b>    | <b>naen</b>     | <b>naeneun</b>     |
|             | 내              | 낸               | 내는                 |
| writes      | <b>sseu-</b>   | <b>sseun</b>    | <b>sseuneun</b>    |
|             | 쓰              | 쑤               | 쓰는                 |
| goes        | <b>ga-</b>     | <b>&gt;gan</b>  | <b>ganeun</b>      |
|             | 가              | 간               | 가는                 |
| gives       | <b>ju-</b>     | <b>jun</b>      | <b>juneun</b>      |
|             | 주              | 쑤               | 주는                 |
| sees, reads | <b>bo-</b>     | <b>bon</b>      | <b>boneun</b>      |
|             | 보              | 본               | 보는                 |
| does        | <b>ha-</b>     | <b>han</b>      | <b>haneun</b>      |
|             | 하              | 한               | 하는                 |
| calls       | <b>bureu-</b>  | <b>bureun</b>   | <b>bureuneun</b>   |
|             | 부르             | 부른              | 부르는                |

## III. -W BASES

---

|           |               |                |                |
|-----------|---------------|----------------|----------------|
| helps     | <b>dow-</b>   | <b>doun</b>    | <b>domneun</b> |
|           | 도             | 도운             | 돕는             |
| lies      | <b>nuw-</b>   | <b>nuun</b>    | <b>numneun</b> |
|           | 누             | 누운             | 눅는             |
| is near   | <b>gakkau</b> | <b>gakkaun</b> | –              |
|           | 가까우           | 가까운            |                |
| is pretty | <b>yepp-</b>  | <b>yeppeun</b> | –              |

예

예쁜

IV. **-R** BASES

---

|         |                   |   |                            |
|---------|-------------------|---|----------------------------|
| walks   | <b>geor-</b><br>걸 | — | <b>geonneun</b><br>걸는      |
| listens | <b>deur-</b><br>들 | — | <b>deureooneun</b><br>들어오는 |

V. **L**— EXTENDING VOWEL BASES

---

|       |                    |                  |                      |
|-------|--------------------|------------------|----------------------|
| hangs | <b>geo-l-</b><br>걸 | <b>geon</b><br>건 | <b>keoneun</b><br>거는 |
| lifts | <b>deu-l-</b><br>들 | <b>deun</b><br>든 | <b>deuneun</b><br>드는 |

## LESSON 36

# “Ever,” “Never” and “Sometimes”

The modifier forms are used in a number of handy expressions best learned as units: **-eun jeogi isseoyo** -은 적이 있어요

has done, (once) did, has done indeed **-eun jeogi isseosseoyo** -은 적이 있었어요

had ever, once had done **-eun jeogi eopseoyo** -은 적이 없어요

has never, never did **-eun jeogi eopseosseoyo** -은 적이 없었어요

had never, never had done The noun **il** means *work, job* but it also means *act, experience*—so the literal meaning of the above expressions is something like *the act or experience of having done something exists (or doesn't exist)*. Here are some examples: **Hanguk eumsik-eul meogeo bon jeok-i isseoyo?**

한국 음식을 먹어 본 적이 있어요?

Have you ever tried eating Korean food?

**Isseoyo.**

있어요

Yes, I have.

**Hanguk eumsikjeom-eseo meogeun jeok isseoyo.**

한국 음식점에서 먹은 적 있어요.

Yes, I have. I've been to a Korean restaurant to eat.

**Geu gongwon-e sanchaek gan jeok isseoyo?**

그 공원에 산책 간 적 있어요?

Have you ever taken a walk in that park?

Another, much less common way to say this is **-eun il-i isseoyo/ eopseoyo** (-은 일이 있어요/없어요).

**Miguk yeonghwa-reul bon ll-i eopseoyo?**

미국 영화를 본 일이 없어요?

Haven't you ever seen an American movie?

**Geureoke joeun eumak-eul deureun ll-i eopseoyo.**

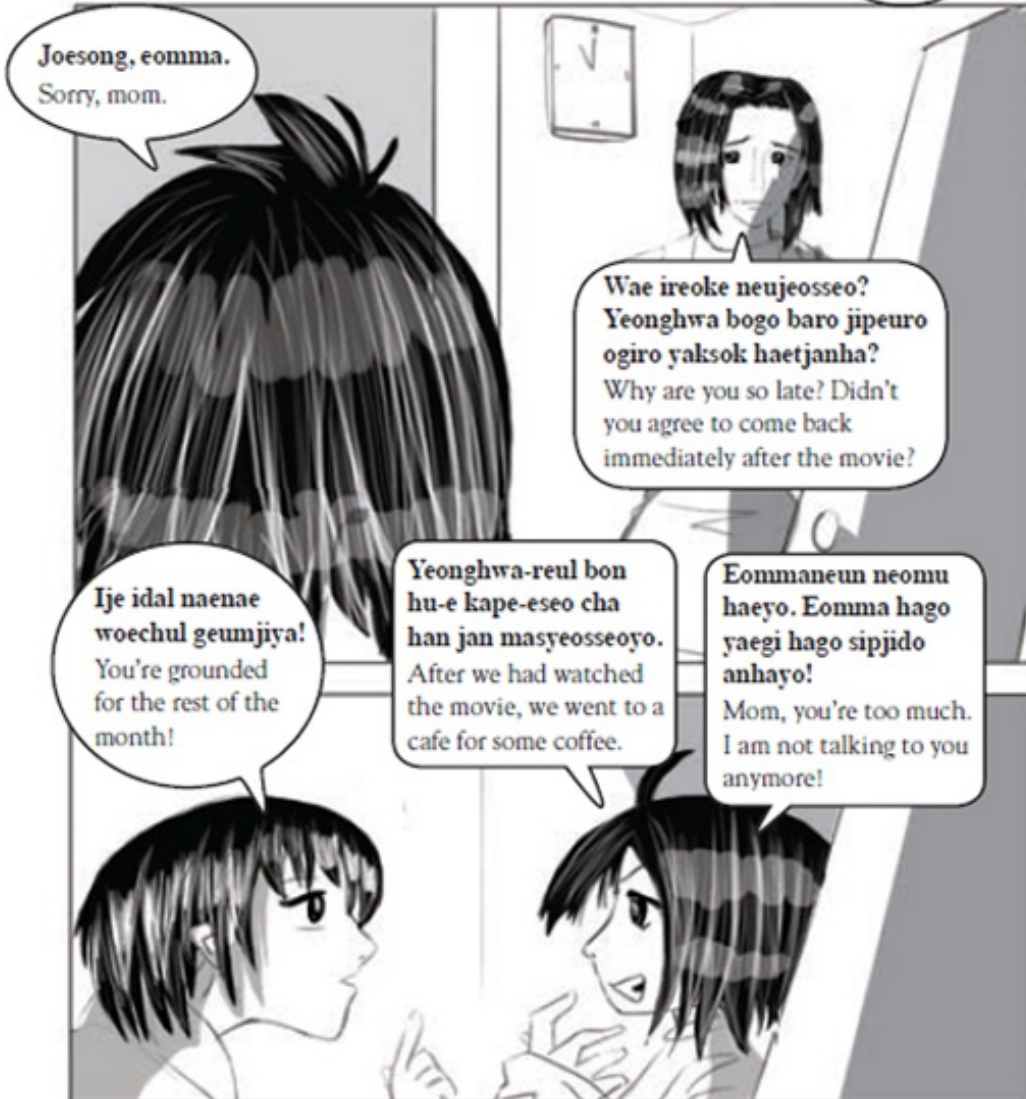
그렇게 좋은 음악을 들은 일이 없어요.

I've never heard such pretty music.



Yeonghwa-reul bon hu-e baro jip-euro doraoseyo.  
Come right back home after you have seen the movie.

Alasseoyo, eomma.  
Yes, mom.



Joesong, eomma.  
Sorry, mom.

Wae ireoke neujeosseo?  
Yeonghwa bogo baro jipeuro ogiro yaksok haetjanha?  
Why are you so late? Didn't you agree to come back immediately after the movie?

Ije idal naenae woechul geumjiya!  
You're grounded for the rest of the month!

Yeonghwa-reul bon hu-e kape-eseo cha han jan maseosseoyo.  
After we had watched the movie, we went to a cafe for some coffee.

Eommaneun neomu haeyo. Eomma hago yaegi hago sipjido anhayo!  
Mom, you're too much. I am not talking to you anymore!

## LESSON 37

# “Before,” “After” and “While”

To say *before something happens* or *before something happened* you use the **-gi** form followed by **jeon** = *prior, earlier, before, ago* usually followed by the particle **e**: **Hakgyo gagi jeon-e gongbu-reul haeyo.**

학교 가기 전에 공부를 해요.

I study the lesson before I come to school.

**Biga ogi jeon-e jip-e gaya haeyo.**

비가 오기 전에 집에 가야 해요.

I've got to get home before it rains.

**Yeonseol-eul sijak hagi jeon-e, mul-eul masyeoya haeyo.**

연설을 시작하기 전에 물을 마셔야 해요.

Before beginning my speech I take a drink of water.

**Jip-eseo tteonagi jeon-e jeo-hante jeonhwa juseyo.**

집에서 떠나기 전에 저한테 전화 주세요.

Please phone me before you leave (go out of) your house.

To say *after something happens* or *after something happened* you use the ordinary modifier form **-eun** plus **hu** = *afterward* which may be followed by the particle **e**: **Jip-e on hu-e gongbu haesseoyo.**

집에 온 후에 공부했어요.

I studied after I came home.

**Yeonghwa-reul bon hu-e kape-eseo cha han jan masyeosseoyo.**

영화를 본 후에 카페에서 차 한 잔 마셨어요.

After we had watched the movie, we went to a cafe and drank a cup of (black) tea.

**Uri gae-ga jugeun hu-e aideul-i oraet dongan ureosseoyo.**

우리 개가 죽은 후에 아이들이 오랫동안 울었어요.

After our dog died, the children cried for a long time.

(**orae** = *long time*; **dongan** = *interval*) **Yeonghwa-reul bon hu-e baro jip-euro doraoseyo.**

영화를 본 후에 바로 집으로 돌아 오세요.

Come right back home after you have seen the movie.

**Dangsin-i jam jagi jeon-e doduk-i deureo wasseoyo, jam deun hu-e deureo wasseoyo?**

당신이 잠 자기 전에 도둑이 들어왔어요, 잠 잔 후에 들어왔어요?

Did the thief come in after you had gone to bed, (or) before you went to bed?

To say *while something is happening* you use the processive modifier **-neun** followed by **jung** = *in the midst of*, or **dongan** = *interval*, or **sai (sae)** = *interval*.

The particle **e** may follow: **Jam jago itteon jungieosseoyo.**

잠자고 있던 중이었어요.

It was while we were sleeping.

**Dangsin-i malhago inneun dongan jeo-neun juwi gipke deukko itsseoyo.**

당신이 말하고 있는 동안 저는 주의깊게 듣고 있어요.

While you were talking I was listening closely (well).

**Jeo-neun jigeum gongbu jung igo gongbu kkeunnamyeon sanchaek gal geoyo.**

저는 지금 공부 중이고 공부 끝나면 산책 갈 거예요.

I am now in the midst of studying but after I've studied, I am going to take a walk.

**Dangsin-i sanchaek naga inneun dongan sonnim-i chaja osyeosseoyo.**

당신이 산책 나가 있는 동안 손님이 찾아 오셨어요.

While you were walking, a guest came to the house.

**Mueo-seul bosigesseoyo?**

무엇을 보시겠어요?



What are you (going) to see?

## LESSON 38

# In the Future

The ordinary present form of verbs often has a future meaning: **Naeil hakgyo-e gayo.**

내일 학교에 가요.

I'm going to school tomorrow.

But if you want to make the future specific, or if you want to refer to a probable present (especially with adjectives), you can use the **gesseoyo** form.

This **-gesseoyo** is added to the verb base in the same way **-go** and **-gi** are added: **Bi-ga ogi jeon-e usan-eul sayagesseoyo.**

비가 오기 전에 우산을 사야겠어요.

I'll have to buy an umbrella before it rains.

**Naeil byeongwon-e ga bwayagesseoyo.**

내일 병원에 가 봐야겠어요.

I'll have to go to a doctor.

**Mueo-seul deusigesseoyo?**

무엇을 드시겠어요?

What will we eat?

**Mueos-eul bosigesseoyo?**

무엇을 보시겠어요.

What are you (going) to see?

You can use the ending **-l geongayo** ≡ **건가요** to ask about someone's future plans.

The ending of the future modifier form is **-eul** after a consonant base, **-l** after a

vowel base. Here are some typical verb types, with future and future modifier forms: **Miguk-e doragasimyeon, mueo-seul hasil geongayo?**

미국에 돌아가시면 무엇을 하실 건가요?

What will you do when you get back to America?

**Eodi-seo sasil geongayo?**

어디서 사실 건가요?

Where will you live?

**Eonje Hanguk-e doraosil geon gayo?**

언제 한국에 돌아오실 건가요?

When will you return to Korea?

Notice the difference between **Jigwon-i jigeum il-eul hago isseul geoyeyo** 직원이 지금 일을 하고 있을 거예요 *The factory-worker must be working now*, and **Jigwon-i jigeum il-eul haeya haeyo** 직원이 지금 일을 해야 해요 *The factory-worker must work now*. Sometimes *must* means *likely, probably*; sometimes it means *has to*.

There is also a FUTURE MODIFIER form meaning *...that will do* or *...that someone will do* or *...that is to be done*: **Sseul pyeonji-ga isseoyo.**

쓸 편지가 있어요

I have letters to write.

**I il-eul hal saram-i isseoyo?**

이 일을 할 사람이 있어요?

Is there someone (a person) to do this job?

**Jeo-reul annaehaejul saram-eul chakko isseoyo.**

저를 안내해 줄 사람을 찾고 있어요.

I'm looking for someone to show me around (guide me).

**Meogeul geot-i isseoyo?**

먹을 것이 있어요?

Is there anything to eat?

**Je-ga meogeul geot-i innayo?**

제가 먹을 것이 있나요?

Would there (likely) be anything for me to eat?

**Eomma-ga jeonyeok-eul junbi hago isseul geoyeo.**

엄마가 저녁을 준비하고 있을 거예요.

My mother will be cooking dinner for us.

Another way to put sentences in the future is **ㄹ 거예요 (l geoyeyo)**, which has exactly the same meaning as **-gesseoyo**, but is much less formal and more commonly used. **-gesseoyo** is most often used in more formal situations or to express real determination, while **-l geoyeyo** has no such connotations and just puts your sentence in the future.

**Oneul bam-e yeonghwareul bol geoyeyo.**

오늘 밤에 영화를 볼 거예요.

I'm going to watch a movie tonight.

**Naeil je chinguga seumateuponeul sal geoyeyo.**

내일 제 친구가 스마트폰을 살 거예요.

Tomorrow my friend is going to buy a smartphone.

**Seonsaengnimi sukjereul jul geoyeyo.**

선생님이 숙제를 줄 거예요.

The teacher will give homework.

I. CONSONANT BASES

---

| MEANING        | BASE             | -GESSEOYO                  | -EUL/-L             |
|----------------|------------------|----------------------------|---------------------|
| catches        | <b>jab-</b><br>잡 | <b>japgesseoyo</b><br>잡겠어요 | <b>jabeul</b><br>잡을 |
| is high        | <b>nop-</b><br>높 | <b>nopgesseoyo</b><br>높겠어요 | <b>nopeul</b><br>높을 |
| is nonexistent | <b>eops-</b>     | <b>eopgesseoyo</b>         | <b>eopseul</b>      |

|               |               |                     |                 |
|---------------|---------------|---------------------|-----------------|
|               | 없             | 없겠어요                | 없을              |
| closes        | <b>dad-</b>   | <b>dakkesseoyo</b>  | <b>dadeul</b>   |
|               | 닫             | 닫겠어요                | 닫을              |
| is like       | <b>gat-</b>   | <b>gakkesseoyo</b>  | <b>gateul</b>   |
|               | 같             | 같겠어요                | 같을              |
| laughs        | <b>us-</b>    | <b>ukkesseoyo</b>   | <b>useul</b>    |
|               | 웃             | 웃겠어요                | 웃을              |
| exists        | <b>iss-</b>   | <b>ikkesseoyo</b>   | <b>isseul</b>   |
|               | 있             | 있겠어요                | 있을              |
| finds         | <b>chaj-</b>  | <b>chakkesseoyo</b> | <b>chajeul</b>  |
|               | 찾             | 찾겠어요                | 찾을              |
| washes        | <b>ssich-</b> | <b>ssikkesseoyo</b> | <b>ssiseul</b>  |
|               | 씻             | 씻겠어요                | 씻을              |
| reads         | <b>ilg-</b>   | <b>ilkkesseoyo</b>  | <b>ilgeul</b>   |
|               | 읽             | 읽겠어요                | 읽을              |
| loses         | <b>ji-</b>    | <b>jigesseoyo</b>   | <b>jil</b>      |
|               | 지             | 지겠어요                | 질               |
| licks         | <b>halt-</b>  | <b>halkkesseoyo</b> | <b>halteul</b>  |
|               | 핥             | 핥겠어요                | 핥을              |
| steps on      | <b>balb-</b>  | <b>balkkesseoyo</b> | <b>balbeul</b>  |
|               | 밟             | 밟겠어요                | 밟을              |
| puts          | <b>noh-</b>   | <b>nokesseoyo</b>   | <b>noeul</b>    |
|               | 놓             | 놓겠어요                | 놓을              |
| eats          | <b>meog-</b>  | <b>meokkesseoyo</b> | <b>meogeul</b>  |
|               | 먹             | 먹겠어요                | 먹을              |
| cuts          | <b>kkakk-</b> | <b>kkakkesseoyo</b> | <b>kkakkeul</b> |
|               | 깎             | 깎겠어요                | 깎을              |
| shampoos      | <b>gam-</b>   | <b>gamkkesseoyo</b> | <b>gameul</b>   |
|               | 감             | 감겠어요                | 감을              |
| wears on feet | <b>sin-</b>   | <b>sinkkesseoyo</b> | <b>sineul</b>   |
|               | 신             | 신겠어요                | 신을              |
| sits          | <b>anj-</b>   | <b>ankkesseoyo</b>  | <b>anjeul</b>   |
|               | 앉             | 앉겠어요                | 앉을              |

|            |                         |                                   |                         |
|------------|-------------------------|-----------------------------------|-------------------------|
| breaks     | <b>busu-</b><br>부수      | <b>busugesseoyo</b><br>부수겠어요      | <b>busul</b><br>부술      |
| is, equals | <b>(i)-</b><br>이        | <b>-(i)gesseoyo</b><br>(이)겠어요     | <b>(i)-l</b><br>을       |
| honorific  | <b>-(eu)si-</b><br>(으)시 | <b>-(eu)sigesseoyo</b><br>(으)시겠어요 | <b>-(eu)sil</b><br>(으)실 |

## II. VOWEL BASES

---

|         |                     |                               |                     |
|---------|---------------------|-------------------------------|---------------------|
| rests   | <b>swi-</b><br>쉬    | <b>swigesseoyo</b><br>쉬겠어요    | <b>swil</b><br>של   |
| becomes | <b>dwe-</b><br>되    | <b>dwegesseoyo</b><br>되겠어요    | <b>dwel</b><br>될    |
| pays    | <b>nae-</b><br>내    | <b>naegesseoyo</b><br>내겠어요    | <b>nael</b><br>낼    |
| writes  | <b>sseu-</b><br>쓰   | <b>sseugesseoyo</b><br>쓰겠어요   | <b>sseul</b><br>쓸   |
| goes    | <b>ga-</b><br>가     | <b>gagesseoyo</b><br>가겠어요     | <b>gal</b><br>갈     |
| gives   | <b>ju-</b><br>주     | <b>jugesseoyo</b><br>주겠어요     | <b>jul</b><br>줄     |
| sees    | <b>bo-</b><br>보     | <b>bogesseoyo</b><br>보겠어요     | <b>bol</b><br>볼     |
| does    | <b>ha-</b><br>하     | <b>hagesseoyo</b><br>하겠어요     | <b>hal</b><br>할     |
| calls   | <b>bureu-</b><br>부르 | <b>bureugesseoyo</b><br>부르겠어요 | <b>bureul</b><br>부를 |

## III. -W BASES

---

|           |                  |                            |                   |
|-----------|------------------|----------------------------|-------------------|
| MEANING   | BASE             | -GESSEOYO                  | -EUL/-L           |
| helps     | <b>dow-</b><br>도 | <b>dopgesseoyo</b><br>돕겠어요 | <b>doul</b><br>도울 |
| lies down | <b>nuw-</b>      | <b>nupgesseoyo</b>         | <b>nuul</b>       |

|         |                            |                                        |                             |
|---------|----------------------------|----------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| is near | 누<br><b>gakkaw-</b><br>가까우 | 눅겠어요<br><b>gakkapgesseoyo</b><br>가깝겠어요 | 누울<br><b>gakkaul</b><br>가까울 |
| buys    | <b>saw-</b><br>사           | <b>sagesseoyo</b><br>사겠어요              | <b>sal</b><br>살             |

#### IV. -R BASES

---

|         |                   |                             |                      |
|---------|-------------------|-----------------------------|----------------------|
| walks   | <b>geor-</b><br>걸 | <b>geokkesseoyo</b><br>걸겠어요 | <b>georeul</b><br>걸을 |
| listens | <b>deur-</b><br>듣 | <b>deukkesseoyo</b><br>듣겠어요 | <b>deureul</b><br>들을 |

#### V. L— EXTENDING VOWEL BASES

---

|        |                    |                                   |                  |
|--------|--------------------|-----------------------------------|------------------|
| hangs  | <b>geo-l-</b><br>걸 | <b>geolgesseoyo</b><br>걸겠어요       | <b>geol</b><br>걸 |
| enters | <b>deul-</b><br>들  | <b>deureogagesseoyo</b><br>들어가겠어요 | <b>deul</b><br>들 |

## LESSON 39

# “Knows” and “Can”

To say someone *knows* something or someone, you use the verb **arayo (a-l-)**; the negative of this is a special verb, **mollayo (moreu-)** *does not know*. These verbs are often used with the FUTURE **gesseoyo**, even though the English translation uses the present: **Arayo?**

알아요?

Do you know?

**Geu-ga moreujiman geu saram abeoji-neun arayo.**

그가 모르지만 그 사람 아버지는 알아요.

He doesn't know but his father knows.

You will recall that the future sometimes means just a PROBABLE PRESENT. Notice the deferential way in English we say: **Gicha-ga tteonaneun sigan arayo?**

기차가 떠나는 시간 알아요?

Would you know what time the train leaves?

**Seoul-e dochak haneun sigan-eul moreugesseoyo.**

서울에 도착하는 시간을 모르겠어요

I wouldn't know what time it gets to Seoul.

(**tteonada-** = *leave*, **dochak hada-** = *arrive*.) To say someone *knows* THAT something happened, you say someone *knows* the FACT (**geot**) that something happened: **Gitcha-ga beolsseo tteonan geol aseyo?**

기차가 벌써 떠난 걸 아세요?

Do you know (realize) that the train has already left?

Note: The verb **arayo** sometimes means *realizes*, *finds out*.

To say someone *knows* HOW TO do something, you use the future modifier **-eul**



followed by the word **jul** and **arayo**: **Yeongeo hal jul aseyo?**

영어 할 줄 아세요?

Do you know how to speak English? Can you speak English?

**Hangukmaleul jal hal jul mollayo.**

한국말을 잘 할 줄 몰라요.

I don't know how to speak Korean very well.

**Hangeul-eul sseul jul moreujiman, gongbu hago sipeunde gareuchyeo juseyo.**

한글을 쓸 줄 모르지만, 공부하고 싶은데 가르쳐 주세요.

I don't know how to write Korean script (**Hangeul**) but I want to study it, so please teach (**gareuchi-**) me a little.

**Suyeong hasil jul aseyo?**

수영 하실 줄 아세요?

Do you know how to swim?

(**suyeong-** = *swim*, **suyeong haeyo** = *swims*.) You will notice that this expression **-eul jjul arayo** (and its negative **-eul jjul mollayo**) is sometimes translated *knows how to (doesn't know how to)* and sometimes *can (can't)*.

This is a special meaning of the English word *can*; the more general meaning *is able to, is in a position to* is expressed in Korean by the expression: **-eul hal su isseoyo**. The literal meaning of this expression is something like *there exists the possibility to do*: **Hangeul-eul sseul jul aljiman, pen-i eopseoseo, jigeum-eun sseul su eopseoyo.**

한글을 쓸 줄 알지만 펜이 없어서 지금은 쓸 수 없어요.

I know how to write Korean letters but I don't have a pen, so I can't write (them) right now.

**Sigan-i eopseoseo chungbunhi gongbu hal su eopseosseoyo.**

시간이 없어서 충분히 공부 할 수 없었어요.

I didn't have any time, so I couldn't study enough.

**Sigan-eun ijjiman don-i eopseoseo chingu mannareo nagal su-ga eopseoyo.**

시간은 있지만 돈이 없어서 친구 만나러 갈수가 없어요.

I've got the time, but I don't have any money so I can't go out to meet my friends.

There is still a third meaning of *can*—the same as the word *may*: **Nae haendeupon-eul sseodo gwaen chanayo.**

내 핸드폰을 써도 괜찮아요.

You can (may) use my cell phone (because you have my permission).

Contrast this with: **Nae handeupon-eul sseul su isseoyo.**

내 핸드폰을 쓸 수 있어요.

You can (are able to) use my cell phone (because it is working).

Here are some more examples of these expressions: **Oneul bame gonghang-e gaya haneunde jihacheol tago gal su ikkesseoyo?**

오늘밤 공항에 가야하는데 지하철 타고 갈 수 있겠어요?

I have to go to the airport tonight, but will I be able to go by subway?

**Jadongcha han dae ijjiman, unjeonhal su inneun saram-i inneunji moreugesseoyo.**

자동차 한 대 있지만 운전할 수 있는 사람이 있는지 모르겠어요.

There is a (one) car available, but I don't know that there is anyone who can drive it.

**Unjeonhasil jul aseyo?**

운전하실 줄 아세요?

Do you know how to drive?

**Molla yo. Unjeonhal jul mollayo.**

몰라요, 운전할 줄 몰라요.

No I don't, I don't know how to drive.

**Geureona uri chingu-ga unjeon hal jul arayo. Geu-ga deryeoga jul su isseulgeoeyo.**

그러나 우리 친구가 운전할 줄 알아요. 그가 데려갈 수 있을 거에 요.

But my friend probably knows how to drive. He will be able to take you to the

airport.

## LESSON 40

# “When” and “If”

There are a number of ways to translate the English word *when*. The most general is perhaps **-eul ttae** = (*at*) *the time when*. The verb in front of **ttae** = *time* is always in the future modifier form regardless of the tense of the English verb: **Beri ullyeoseul ttae naneun jameul jago iseoseoyo.**

벨이 울렸을 때 나는 잠을 자고 있었어요.

When the bell rang, I was asleep.

**Geu ttae seonsaengnim-eun eodi gyesyesseoyo?**

그 때 선생님은 어디 계셨어요?

Where were you then (at that time)?

**Bi-ga ol ttae usan-eul gajeogaya haeyo.**

비가 올 때 우산을 가져가야 해요.

When it rains, you have to have an umbrella.

**Gimssie jip-e gamyeon, Hangungmal-man hasipsio.**

김씨의 집에가면 한국말만 하십시오.

When we go to Mr. Kim's house, please speak only Korean.

To say *if* you use a special verb form which has the shape **-myeon** after a consonant base, **-eu myeon** after a vowel base. This is also used to mean *whenever*: **Bi-ga omyeon, jip-e isseul geoeyo.**

비가 오면 집에 있을 거예요.

If it rains, I'll stay home.

**Bi-ga ol ttae, na-neun jip-e isseoyo.**

비가 올 때 나는 집에 있어요.

Whenever it rains, I stay home.

There's a special way to say *when one thing happens then something else interrupts it*—sentences like *when I was listening to the radio, I heard a noise upstairs* or *while we were out walking it rained*.

You use a form which ends in **-da** and is usually followed by the particle **ga**. This shows the single interruption of an action—which may or may not be resumed. **Na neun radio-reul deuddaga, jam-i deuresseoyo.** 나는 라디오를 듣다가 잠이 들었어요. *I fell asleep while I was listening to the radio.* **Uriga sanchaek hadaga, bi-reul manasseoyo.** 우리가 산책 하다가 비를 만났어요. *While we were taking a walk, the rain came.*

There is a past form of this **-da** which has the ending **-otta** (or **-atta** with a number of irregularities, like all infinitives and past forms). The meaning of the past **-otta** form is *when one thing has happened, then something else contradictory or unanticipated happens right after*— without INTERRUPTING the action so much as CHANGING it. For example: **Sangjeom-e gatta wasseoyo.**

상점에 갔다 왔어요.

I went to the store and then (turned around and) came right back.

**Gimssiga ucheguk-e watta gasseoyo.**

김씨가 우체국에 왔다 갔어요

Mr. Kim came to the post office and left again.

Two contradictory actions can be shown as going on in ALTERNATION by using two of these **-otta** forms followed by **haeyo**: **Saramdeul-i gyesok gwatda gatta haeyo.**

사람들이 계속 왔다갔다 해요.

People keep coming and going.

To talk about two actions which are not in alternation, but are going on at the same time, you use the **-eumyeon** (essentially means “*while*”) form followed by the particle **seo**: **Radio-reul deureumyeonseo gongbu haeyo.**

라디오를 들으면서 공부해요.

I study while listening to the radio.

**Chaek-eul bomyeonseo agi-reul bwayo.**

책을 보면서 아기를봐요.

I read (books) while babysitting.

When you add the particle **do** 도, **-eumyeonseo** 으면서 becomes **-eumyeonseodo** 으면서도 and means *even while*.

**Hangungmal-eul inyeon jjae gongbu hago isseumyeonseo-do, jal malhal jul mollayo.**

한국말을 이년 째 공부하고 있으면서도 잘 말할 줄 몰라요.

While (though) I have been studying Korean for two years, I can't speak it very well.

You will recall that **-eoseo** means *does and then* or *does and so*, and **-go** means *does and then* or *does and also*.

The important thing about the **-da(ga)** forms is that they always show a TRANSFER of action. The gerund **-go** simply links two verb expressions; **-da(ga)** links two verb expressions stressing the CONTRADICTION nature of the two; **-eoseo** stresses the close CONSEQUENCE of the second verb.

Here are **-eumyeon** and **-da(ga)** forms for some typical verbs:

## I. CONSONANT BASES

| MEANING         | BASE         | -EUMYEON, -MYEON   | -DA(GA)           | -ATTA(GA)            |
|-----------------|--------------|--------------------|-------------------|----------------------|
| catches         | <b>jab-</b>  | <b>jabeumyeon</b>  | <b>japda(ga)</b>  | <b>jabatta(ga)</b>   |
|                 | 잡            | 잡으면                | 잡다(가)             | 잡았다(가)               |
| closes          | <b>dad-</b>  | <b>dadeumyeon</b>  | <b>datta(ga)</b>  | <b>dadatta(ga)</b>   |
|                 | 닫            | 닫으면                | 닫다 (가)            | 닫았다 (가)              |
| exists          | <b>iss-</b>  | <b>isseumyeon</b>  | <b>itta(ga)</b>   | <b>isseotta(ga)</b>  |
|                 | 있            | 있으면                | 있다 (가)            | 있었다 (가)              |
| is non-existent | <b>eops-</b> | <b>eopseumyeon</b> | <b>eopda(ga)</b>  | <b>eopseotta(ga)</b> |
|                 | 없            | 없으면                | 없다(가)             | 없었다(가)               |
| laughs          | <b>us-</b>   | <b>useumyeon</b>   | <b>utta(ga)</b>   | <b>useotta(ga)</b>   |
|                 | 웃            | 웃으면                | 웃다(가)             | 웃었다(가)               |
| finds           | <b>chaj-</b> | <b>chajeumyeon</b> | <b>chatta(ga)</b> | <b>chajatta(ga)</b>  |
|                 | 찾            | 찾으면                | 찾다(가)             | 찾았다(가)               |
| reads           | <b>ilg-</b>  | <b>ilgeumyeon</b>  | <b>ikda(ga)</b>   | <b>ilgeotta(ga)</b>  |

|          |              |                    |                     |                      |
|----------|--------------|--------------------|---------------------|----------------------|
|          | 읽            | 읽으면                | 읽다(가)               | 읽었다(가)               |
| puts     | <b>noh-</b>  | <b>noeumyeon</b>   | <b>nota(ga)</b>     | <b>noatta(ga)</b>    |
|          | 놓            | 놓으면                | 놓다(가)               | 놓았다(가)               |
| eats     | <b>meog</b>  | <b>meogeumyeon</b> | <b>meokda(ga)</b>   | <b>meokeotta(ga)</b> |
|          | 먹            | 먹으면                | 먹다(가)               | 먹었다(가)               |
| wears on | <b>sin-</b>  | <b>sineumyeon</b>  | <b>shintta(ga)</b>  | <b>sineotta(ga)</b>  |
| feet     | 신            | 신으면                | 신다(가)               | 신었다(가)               |
| sits     | <b>anj-</b>  | <b>anjeumyeon</b>  | <b>antta(ga)</b>    | <b>anjatta(ga)</b>   |
|          | 앉            | 앉으면                | 앉다(가)               | 앉았다(가)               |
| breaks   | <b>busu-</b> | <b>busumyeon</b>   | <b>buseotta(ga)</b> | <b>busyeotta(ga)</b> |
|          | 부수           | 부수면                | 부셨다(가)              | 부셨었다(가)              |

## II. VOWEL BASES

---

|        |               |                   |                    |                      |
|--------|---------------|-------------------|--------------------|----------------------|
| rests  | <b>swi-</b>   | <b>swimyeon</b>   | <b>swida(ga)</b>   | <b>swieotta(ga)</b>  |
|        | 쉬             | 쉬면                | 쉬다(가)              | 쉬었다(가)               |
| pays   | <b>nae-</b>   | <b>naemyeon</b>   | <b>naeda(ga)</b>   | <b>naetta(ga)</b>    |
|        | 내             | 내면                | 내다(가)              | 냈다(가)                |
| writes | <b>sseu-</b>  | <b>sseumyeon</b>  | <b>sseuda(ga)</b>  | <b>sseotta(ga)</b>   |
|        | 쓰             | 쓰면                | 쓰다(가)              | 썼다(가)                |
| goes   | <b>ga-</b>    | <b>gamyeon</b>    | <b>gada(ga)</b>    | <b>gatta(ga)</b>     |
|        | 가             | 가면                | 가다(가)              | 갔다(가)                |
| does   | <b>ha-</b>    | <b>hamyeon</b>    | <b>hada(ga)</b>    | <b>haetta(ga)</b>    |
|        | 하             | 하면                | 하다                 | 했다(가)                |
| calls  | <b>bureu-</b> | <b>bureumyeon</b> | <b>bureuda(ga)</b> | <b>bulleotta(ga)</b> |
|        | 부르            | 부르면               | 부르다(가)             | 불렀다(가)               |

## III. -W BASES

---

|           |             |                  |                  |                    |
|-----------|-------------|------------------|------------------|--------------------|
| MEANING   | BASE        | -EUMYEON, -MYEON | -DA(GA)          | -ATTA(GA)          |
| helps     | <b>dow-</b> | <b>doumyeon</b>  | <b>dopda(ga)</b> | <b>dowatta(ga)</b> |
|           | 도우          | 도우면              | 돕다 (가)           | 도왔다 (가)            |
| lies down | <b>nuw-</b> | <b>nuumyeon</b>  | <b>nupda(ga)</b> | <b>nuwotta(ga)</b> |
|           | 누우          | 누우면              | 눅다 (가)           | 누웠다 (가)            |

|         |                                 |                          |                       |
|---------|---------------------------------|--------------------------|-----------------------|
| is near | <b>gakkaw- kakkau<br/>myeon</b> | <b>gakkapda<br/>(ga)</b> | <b>kakkawotta(ga)</b> |
|         | 가까우    가까우면                     | 가깝다 (가)                  | 가까웠다 (가)              |

IV. **-R** BASES

---

|         |                          |                   |                      |
|---------|--------------------------|-------------------|----------------------|
| walks   | <b>geor- georeumyeon</b> | <b>geotta(ga)</b> | <b>georeotta(ga)</b> |
|         | 걸    걸으면                 | 걷다 (가)            | 걸었다(가)               |
| listens | <b>deur- deureumyeon</b> | <b>deutta(ga)</b> | <b>deureotta(ga)</b> |
|         | 들    들으면                 | 듣다 (가)            | 들었다(가)               |

V. **L**— EXTENDING VOWEL BASES

---

|        |                             |                     |                        |
|--------|-----------------------------|---------------------|------------------------|
| hangs  | <b>geo-l- geoleumyeon</b>   | <b>geolda(ga)</b>   | <b>georeotta(ga)</b>   |
|        | 걸    걸으면                    | 걸다 (가)              | 걸었다(가)                 |
| enters | <b>deu-l- deureogamyeon</b> | <b>deureoga(ga)</b> | <b>deureogatta(ga)</b> |
|        | 들    들어가면                   | 들어가다                | 들어갔다(가)                |



## LESSON 41

**Hoping and Wishing** To say *I hope something will happen* or *I wish something would happen* you use an expression which means literally *if something happens it will be nice* = **-eumyeon jokkesseoyo.**

**Nun-i omyeon jokkesseoyo.**

눈이 오면 좋겠어요.

I hope it snows.

**Ibon-edo ga bol ssu isseumyeon jokkesseoyo.**

일본에도 가 볼 수 있으면 좋겠어요.

I hope I'll be able to go see Japan, too.

**Hangungmal-eul Hanguk saram gachi jal hamyeon jokkesseoyo.**

한국말을 한국 사람 같이 잘 하면 좋겠어요.

I wish I could speak Korean well like the Koreans.

**Bi-ga an omyeon jokkesseoyo.**

비가 안 오면 좋겠어요.

I hope it doesn't rain.

**Uri jip-e osil ssu isseumyeon jokkesseoyo.**

우리 집에 오실 수 있으면 좋겠어요.

It'll be nice if you can come to our house.

To say *I would like to do* you use **-go sipeoyo: Dosi-ro gago sipeoyo.**

도시로 가고 싶어요.

I'd like to go to town.

To say *someone would like to do something* you say **-go sipeohaeyo: Eomma-ga swigo sipeohaeyo.**

엄마가 쉬고 싶어해요.  
Mother would like to rest.

To GIVE permission you say **-eodo joa yo** (or **-eodo kwaenchanayo**) = *it is okay to, it is all right even if (you do)*.

To DENY permission, you use the expression **-eumyeon an dweyo** = *it won't do to, one mustn't, oughtn't, shouldn't*. You can also use **eodo an dweyo** (어도 안 돼요) in some situations.

**Neukke omyeon an dweyo.**

늦게오면 안 돼요.  
You mustn't come back late.

**Aideul eun dambae pimyeon an dweyo.**

아이들은 담배피면 안 돼요.  
Children shouldn't smoke cigarettes.

**Hwanja hago orae malhamyeon an dweyo.**

환자하고 오래 말하면 안돼요.  
You mustn't talk with the patient long.

**Sul-eul neomu mani masimyeon an dweyo.**

술을 너무 많이 마시면 안 돼요.  
You shouldn't drink so (much).

**Maldo an dweyo!**

말도 안 돼요!  
Don't even say that!

**Ijjik oji aneumyeon an dweyo.**

일찍오지 않으면 안돼요.  
You should come back early.

**Eotteon geot-do manjeoseo-neun an dweyo.**

어떤 것도 만져서는 안돼요.

You ought not to touch anything.

But a milder way to expressing obligation is *ought* or *should* which the Koreans say with **-ji aneumyeon andweyo** = *if you don't, it's no good*: To say *has to*, *must* you use the expression **-eoya haeyo**.

**Samusire gagi jeon-e bab-eul meogeoya haeyo.**

사무실에 가기 전에 밥을 먹어야 해요.

I (we) have to eat before going to the office.

**Gicha-ga tteonagi jeon-e eumsik-eul saya haeyo.**

기차가 떠나기 전에 음식을 사야해요.

We ought to buy some food (stuffs) before the train leaves.

## LESSON 42

# What the Weather Looks Like To say

something *looks like* or *seems like* something you can use several expressions.

One consists of any modifier form followed by **moyang ieyo** = *it's the appearance of*. Another consists of any modifier form followed by **geot gatayo** = *it's like the fact of*. The former expression stresses the appearance; the latter stresses the similarity: **Seonsaengnim cheoreom boyeoyo**.

선생님처럼 보여요.

She looks like a teacher.

### **Seonsaengnim in geot gatayo.**

선생님인 것 같아요.

She seems to be a teacher.

Here are some examples of these expressions: **Bi-ga ol geot gatayo.**

비가 올 것 같아요.

It looks as if it will rain.

### **Eojet bam nun-i on geot gatayo.**

어젯밤 눈이 온 것 같아요.

It looks as though it had snowed last night.

### **Nalssi-ga joeun geot gatayo.**

날씨가 좋은 것 같아요.

The weather seems to be nice.

### **Nalssi-ga nabbeun geot gatayo.**

날씨가 나쁜 것 같아요.

The weather seems to be bad (nasty).

### **Haneul-e kureum-i isseoseo eoduweoyo.**

하늘에 구름이 있어서 어두워요.  
There are clouds in the sky, so it's dark.

**Haneul-e gureum-i isseoseo eodupjiman, hae-ga naogo isseoyo.**

하늘에 구름이 있어서 어둡지만 해가 나오고 있어요.  
There are clouds in the sky, so it's dark, but it looks like the sun is coming out.

**Hae-ga nawaseo balgayo.**

해가 나와서 밝아요.  
The sun is out, so it's light.

**Oneul achim-e baram-i buna bwayo?**

오늘 아침에 바람이 부나 봐요.  
Does there seem to be a wind blowing this morning?

**Adeul-i bus-reul nocheosseul ji-do mollayo.**

아들이 버스를 놓쳤을 지도 몰라요.  
My son seems to have missed the bus.

To say that something *gets to be, turns into* a certain condition, you use the infinitive of an adjective followed by the auxiliary verb **joayo** (base **ji-**).

**Deowojeosseoyo.**

더워졌어요.  
It's gotten hot.

**Deowoyo.**

더워요.  
It is hot.

**Siwon haejimyeon doragal geyo.**

시원해지면 돌아갈게요.  
I'll go back when it gets cool.

**Siwonhan go-seul chakko isseoyo.**

시원한 곳을 찾고 있어요.  
I'm looking for a cool spot.

**Hae-ga tteumyeon, deowojyeoyo.**

해가 뜨면 더워져요.  
When the sun comes out, it gets warm.

**Yeogi-ga ttatteut hago joayo.**

여기가 따뜻하고 좋아요.  
This place is nice and warm.

**Neomu deowojjiman chukku hareo nagasseoyo.**

너무 더웠지만 축구하러 나갔어요.  
It was hot, but I went out to play soccer.

Neomu deowojjiman  
chukku hareo nagasseoyo.

It was hot, but I went out to  
play soccer.



## LESSON 43

# “Because”

You have learned that **-eoseo** links two verbal expressions stressing that the second is the consequence of the first: *and so*. This is a very weak way of saying the second expression *is so* BECAUSE of the first. There are a number of ways in which this BECAUSE can be made a bit stronger.

The most common is to use the **-gi** form followed by **ttaemun-(e)**: **Bi-ga ogi ttaemune nagago sipji anayo.**

비가 오기 때문에 나가고 싶지 않아요.  
I don't want to go because it's raining.

**Doni eopgi ttaemune eommaneun nagago sipji anayo.**

돈이 없기 때문에 엄마는 나가고 싶지 않아요.  
Mom doesn't want to go out because she doesn't have any money.

For the past and future there are special forms which consist of inserting the past marker (**-eoss**— in its basic form) or the future marker (**-gess**— in its basic form) between the base and **-gi**: **-eokki** (**-akki**, etc.) and **-gekki**.

**Meonjeo bap-eul meogeottki ttaemune baegopeuji anayo.**

먼저 밥을 먹었기 때문에 고프지 않아요.  
I'm not hungry because I've already eaten.

**Nae-ga naeil Gimssireul mannagi ttaemune, geu bun-hante geu iyagi-reul hal geyo.**

내가 내일 김씨를 만나기 때문에 그 분한테 그 이야기를 할게요.  
I'll tell Mr. Kim about that, because I'll see him tomorrow.

**Wae geureoke neukke doraoseyo?**

왜 그렇게 늦게 돌아오세요?  
Why do you come home so late?



**Gongjang-eseo haeyahal il-i neomu manattki ttaemunieyo.**

공장에서 해야할 일이 너무 많았기 때문이에요.

It's because we had a lot of work to do at the factory.

Another very common way to say “so” is **nikka** 니까, which works similarly to **어서**. One important difference is that you can't use **eseo** **어서** when asking a question or giving a command—in this case, use **nikka** 니까 instead.

**Chigeum bappeunikka geu naeyongeul imeillo juseyo.**

지금 바쁘니까 그 내용을 이메일로 주세요.

I'm busy right now, so please give me that information by email.

**Biga onikka oneul daesine naeile sanchaekhamyeon eottaeyo?**

비가 오니까 오늘 대신에 내일에 산책하면 어때요?

It's raining, so how about going for a walk tomorrow instead of today?

**Wae yeonghwareul an bwayo?**

왜 영화를 안 봐요?

Why aren't you watching the movie?

**Beolsseo bwasseunik kayo.**

벌써 봤으니까요.

Because I already saw it.

## LESSON 44

**Casual Remarks Using -jiyo** You have learned that the **-ji** form appears in negative sentences (**-jianayo** = *does not, is not*) and at the end of clauses with the particle **man** (**-jiman** = *does but, is but*).

This form also appears at the end of a sentence before the polite particle **yo**. The meaning of a sentence ending in **-jiyo** (almost always abbreviated to simply **jyo** 죠.) is about the same as one ending in **-eoyo**—this is just a more CASUAL way of putting the sentence. These casual sentences are frequently mixed with ordinary sentences and sometimes the casual flavor gives them rather special meanings. For one thing, these are about the only sentences that occur with that peculiar dipping intonation you may have noticed with the expression **Aniyo** = *No*.

The meaning of this dipping intonation is to LIVEN UP the sentence or to INSIST ON it; often the sentence is a sort of question, and the meaning is ...*it is, isn't it?* or *does, doesn't it?*: **Gimssi isi jyo?**

김씨이시죠?

You are Mr. Kim, aren't you?

**Yeogi-seo jom swieodo dwejyo?**

여기서 좀 쉬어도 되죠?

It'll be all right to rest here a bit, won't it?

Often the **-jiyo** form is a COMMAND or PROPOSITION, offered somewhat casually.

**Cha han jan masilkkayo?**

차 한 잔 마실까요?

Shall we have a cup of tea?

**Cha han jan masijyo.**

차 한 잔 마시죠.

Let's have a cup of tea.

**Yeonghwareul boreo galkkayo?**

영화를 보러 갈까요?  
Shall we go to a movie?

**Yeonghwa boreo gajyo.**

영화보러 가죠.  
Let's see a movie.

Sometimes the **-jiyo** form is a question, again rather casual: **Myeotsie doraosijiyo?**

몇 시에 돌아오시지요?  
What time will you be back?

**Miguk-e eonje doragasi jiyo?**

미국에 언제 돌아 가시지요?  
When will you be going back to America?

If the **-ji** form is a statement about someone else, the English translation can suggest the flavor of the casualness by adding a rather meaningless *you know* or *don't you know* or *I guess*.

Often this is a way of GIVING INFORMATION in Korean—the casualness has a polite tinge: **Dangsin-do asijiman Miguk-edo chuun nal-i ijiyo.**

당신도 아시지만 미국에도 추운 날이 있지요.  
We have cold days (or weather) in America too, you know.

**Beuraun sowiga Sikago eseo sal jiyo.**

브라운 소위가 시카고에서 살지요.  
Mr. Brown lives in Chicago.

**Na-neun euisa-ga anigo ganhosa ijiyo.**

나는 의사가 아니고 간호사이지요.  
I'm not a doctor, you know. I'm a nurse you see.

**Geu seonsaengnim-eun Hanguk saram ieyo?**

그 선생님은 한국 사람이예요?

Is that teacher a Korean?

**Mullon ijiyo!**

물론이지요.

Of course!

You do not usually answer questions about yourself with the **-jiyo** form. Use the ordinary **eoyo** form instead.

## LESSON 45

### Some Abbreviations

Here are some common shortened forms. **Geot** 것 is shortened to **geo** 거, **geot-i** 것이 to **ge** 게, and **geot ieyo** 것이예요 to **geyo** 게요. **Ige nae kkeo eyo**. 이게 내 거예요 = **Igeot-i nae-keoyo**. 이것이 내 거요. *This is mine.*

**Mueot** 무엇 is shortened to **mweo** 뭐, **mueotieyo** 무엇이에요 to **mweoyo** 뭐요. **Mweo isseoyo?** 뭐 있어요? = **Mueot-i isseoyo?** 무엇이 있어요? = *What do you have?* **Mweo?** 뭐요? = **Mueosieyo?** 무엇이에요 요? *What is it?*

The particle **neun** 는 is abbreviated to **n** ㄴ after a vowel: **nan** 난 = **naneun** 나는 = *as for me*, **igeon** 이건 = **igeos-eun** 이것은 = *this thing*. The particle **reul** 를 is abbreviated to **l** ㄹ after a vowel: **nal** 날 = **nareul** 나를 = *me* (as direct object), **igeol** 이걸 = **igeos-eul** 이것을 = *this thing* (as direct object).

You have already learned that **nugu** 누구 becomes **nu** 누 in front of the particle **ga** 가, and that **na** 나 becomes **nae** 내 in that position. And you have learned that **ani** 아니 is shortened to **an** 안 in front of a verb. You may run into other abbreviations from time to time; try to find out what the full form of the abbreviation is. If you show you haven't understood, a Korean will repeat himself and often give you an expanded version of an abbreviated expression just as we often repeat *do not* for *don't* when we slow down.

## LESSON 46

# The Structure of Verb Forms

A complete description of Korean verbs is too involved for a textbook of this size. However, a general notion of the structure of the forms may be of help to you. Look at the following table which shows, in a rough way, how the verb forms are put together.

| 1    | 2                 | 3                                           | 4            | 5             | 6                                                                                                                             | (7)         |
|------|-------------------|---------------------------------------------|--------------|---------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|
| BASE | HONORIFIC         | PAST                                        | PAST         | FUTURE        | MOOD                                                                                                                          | (PARTICLE)  |
|      | <b>-(eu)s(i)-</b> | <b>-ass-</b><br><b>-ass-</b><br><i>etc.</i> | <b>-ass-</b> | <b>-gess-</b> | <b>-eo, -a, -e</b><br><b>-hal-</b><br><br><b>-go</b><br><b>-gi</b><br><b>-chi</b><br><br>-<br><b>(eu)myeon</b><br><i>etc.</i> | <b>(yo)</b> |

Now look at the forms below:

| 1           | 2            | 3            | 4            | 5             | 6          | (7)         |
|-------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|---------------|------------|-------------|
| <b>dad-</b> |              |              |              |               | <b>-eo</b> | <b>(yo)</b> |
| <b>dat-</b> |              |              |              | <b>-gess-</b> | <b>-eo</b> | <b>(yo)</b> |
| <b>dad-</b> |              | <b>-ass-</b> |              |               | <b>-eo</b> | <b>(yo)</b> |
| <b>dad-</b> | <b>-eus-</b> |              |              |               | <b>-eo</b> | <b>(yo)</b> |
| <b>dad-</b> |              | <b>-ass-</b> |              |               | <b>-eo</b> | <b>(yo)</b> |
| <b>dad-</b> |              | <b>-ad-</b>  | <b>eul</b>   | <b>-geo-</b>  | <b>-eo</b> | <b>(yo)</b> |
| <b>dad-</b> |              | <b>-ass-</b> | <b>-eul-</b> | <b>-geo-</b>  | <b>-eo</b> | <b>(yo)</b> |
| <b>dad-</b> | <b>-eus</b>  | <b>-i</b>    |              | <b>-gess-</b> | <b>-eo</b> | <b>(yo)</b> |

|             |              |                |               |               |                 |
|-------------|--------------|----------------|---------------|---------------|-----------------|
| <b>dad-</b> | <b>-eus-</b> | <b>-yeoss-</b> |               | <b>-eo</b>    | <b>(yo)</b>     |
| <b>dad-</b> | <b>-eus-</b> | <b>-yeoss-</b> | <b>-eoss-</b> | <b>-eo</b>    | <b>(yo)</b>     |
| <b>dad-</b> | <b>-eus-</b> | <b>-eot-</b>   |               | <b>-gess-</b> | <b>(yo)</b>     |
| <b>dad-</b> | <b>-eus-</b> | <b>-yeot-</b>  | <b>-eot-</b>  | <b>-ge-</b>   | <b>-ji (yo)</b> |

These forms have the following meanings: **Dadayo.**

닫아요.

Closes.

**Dakkesseoyo.**

닫겠어요.

Will close. Probably closes.

**Dadasseoyo.**

닫았어요.

Closed.

**Dadeuseyo.**

닫으세요.

Someone honored closes.

**Dadaseoseoyo.**

닫았었어요.

Had closed. Closed.

**Dadeul geoeyo.**

닫을 거예요.

Will close. Probably closes.

**Dadasseul geoeyo.**

닫았을 거예요.

Will have closed. Probably had closed.

**Dadeusigesseoyo.**

닫으시겠어요.

Someone honored will close. Someone honored probably closes.

**Dadeusyeosseoyo.**

닫으셨어요.

Someone honored closed.

**Dadeu syoesseosseoyo.**

닫으셨었어요.

Someone honored had closed.

**Dadeu syosseul geoeyo.**

닫으셨을 거예요.

Someone honored will have closed. Someone honored probably closed.

**Dadeusyeokket jiyo.**

닫으셨겠지요.

Someone honored will have closed. Someone honored probably had closed.

The past-past (*had done, did*) and the past-future (*will have done, probably did*) are not often used.

There are quite a lot of *moods* (the final suffix in the verb form) and you have only learned a few of the most useful ones in this book.



# Romanization Table

The following Romanization table compares the transliteration of the USUAL or BASIC values of the Korean letters. There are four columns.

The first shows the letter of the Korean alphabet, **Hangeul**. These are arranged not according to any traditional order, but according to their phonetic characteristics.

The second column presents the standard Korean government romanization system which was introduced in the year 2000 and is used throughout this book.

The third column presents the McCune-Reischauer transcription.

The fourth column shows the Yale Romanization used by the author in other publications on the Korean language. This system avoids the use of unusual symbols or gadgets over ordinary letters by taking advantage of certain principles built into the structure of the language. But it takes a little while to get used to the values of some of the spellings.

Learning the shapes of native Korean symbols is just part of the job in learning to read and write; you will also need to know something about Korean spelling rules and the ways the symbols are put together to make syllables and words. Koreans will be glad to help you with this.

| Hangeul | New romanization | McCuneR.     | Yale      |
|---------|------------------|--------------|-----------|
| ㅍ       | <b>p, b</b>      | <b>p, b</b>  | <b>p</b>  |
| ㅑ       | <b>p</b>         | <b>p'</b>    | <b>ph</b> |
| ㅓ       | <b>pp</b>        | <b>pp</b>    | <b>pp</b> |
| ㅕ       | <b>d</b>         | <b>t, d</b>  | <b>t</b>  |
| ㅗ       | <b>t</b>         | <b>t'</b>    | <b>th</b> |
| ㅛ       | <b>tt</b>        | <b>tt</b>    | <b>tt</b> |
| ㅜ       | <b>s</b>         | <b>s</b>     | <b>s</b>  |
| ㅠ       | <b>ss</b>        | <b>ss</b>    | <b>ss</b> |
| ㅛ       | <b>j</b>         | <b>ch, j</b> | <b>c</b>  |
| ㅜ       | <b>ch</b>        | <b>ch'</b>   | <b>ch</b> |
| ㅠ       | <b>jj</b>        | <b>tch</b>   | <b>cc</b> |

|   |             |             |            |
|---|-------------|-------------|------------|
| ㄱ | <b>g, k</b> | <b>k, g</b> | <b>k</b>   |
| ㅋ | <b>k</b>    | <b>k'</b>   | <b>kh</b>  |
| ㄲ | <b>kk</b>   | <b>kk</b>   | <b>kk</b>  |
| ㅁ | <b>m</b>    | <b>m</b>    | <b>m</b>   |
| ㄴ | <b>n</b>    | <b>n</b>    | <b>n</b>   |
| ㅇ | <b>ng</b>   | <b>ng</b>   | <b>ng</b>  |
| ㄹ | <b>r, l</b> | <b>r, l</b> | <b>l</b>   |
| ㅎ | <b>h</b>    | <b>h</b>    | <b>h</b>   |
| ㅣ | <b>i</b>    | <b>i</b>    | <b>i</b>   |
| ㅍ | <b>wi</b>   | <b>wi</b>   | <b>wi</b>  |
| ㅑ | <b>e</b>    | <b>e</b>    | <b>ey</b>  |
| ㅓ | <b>ye</b>   | <b>ye</b>   | <b>yey</b> |
| ㅕ | <b>we</b>   | <b>we</b>   | <b>wey</b> |
| ㅗ | <b>ui</b>   | <b>oe</b>   | <b>oy</b>  |
| ㅛ | <b>ae</b>   | <b>ae</b>   | <b>ay</b>  |
| ㅜ | <b>yae</b>  | <b>yae</b>  | <b>yay</b> |
| ㅠ | <b>wae</b>  | <b>wae</b>  | <b>way</b> |
| ㅡ | <b>eu</b>   | <b>ũ</b>    | <b>u</b>   |
| ㅜ | <b>eo</b>   | <b>õ</b>    | <b>e</b>   |
| ㅠ | <b>yeo</b>  | <b>yõ</b>   | <b>ye</b>  |
| ㅝ | <b>wo</b>   | <b>wõ</b>   | <b>we</b>  |
| ㅑ | <b>a</b>    | <b>a</b>    | <b>a</b>   |
| ㅓ | <b>ya</b>   | <b>ya</b>   | <b>ya</b>  |
| ㅕ | <b>wa</b>   | <b>wa</b>   | <b>wa</b>  |
| ㅗ | <b>u</b>    | <b>u</b>    | <b>*wu</b> |
| ㅛ | <b>yu</b>   | <b>yu</b>   | <b>yu</b>  |
| ㅜ | <b>o</b>    | <b>o</b>    | <b>o</b>   |
| ㅠ | <b>yo</b>   | <b>yo</b>   | <b>yo</b>  |
| ㅡ | <b>ui</b>   | <b>ũi</b>   | <b>uy</b>  |

\* but **u** after **p, ph, pp, m, y**

# English–Korean Dictionary

## A

|                      |              |                                |
|----------------------|--------------|--------------------------------|
| about, approximately | ...정도        | <b>...jeongdo</b>              |
| about, regarding     | ...에 대해      | <b>...e daehae</b>             |
| above, upstairs      | ...위에        | <b>...wi e</b>                 |
| abroad               | 해외에(서)       | <b>haeoe e(seo)</b>            |
| accident             | 사고           | <b>sago</b>                    |
| adaptor              | 어댑터          | <b>eodaepseo</b>               |
| address              | 주소           | <b>juso</b>                    |
| admission price      | 입장료          | <b>ipjang nyo</b>              |
| adult                | 어른           | <b>eoreun</b>                  |
| advice               | 충고           | <b>chunggo</b>                 |
| after (place)        | 뒤에           | <b>...dwi e</b>                |
| after (time)         | 후에           | <b>...hu e</b>                 |
| afternoon            | 오후           | <b>ohu</b>                     |
| aftershave           | 애프터 쉐이브      | <b>aepeuteo sweibeu</b>        |
| again                | 다시           | <b>dasi</b>                    |
| age                  | 나이           | <b>na i</b>                    |
| AIDS                 | 에이즈          | <b>E i jeu</b>                 |
| air conditioning     | 냉난방          | <b>naeng nanbang</b>           |
| airmail              | 항공 우편        | <b>hanggong upyeon</b>         |
| airplane             | 비행기          | <b>bihaenggi</b>               |
| airport              | 공항           | <b>gonghang</b>                |
| alarm clock          | 알람 시계        | <b>allam sigye</b>             |
| alcohol, liquor      | 술            | <b>sul</b>                     |
| all day              | 종일           | <b>jongil</b>                  |
| all the time         | 항상           | <b>hangsang</b>                |
| allergy              | 알레르기         | <b>alle reugi</b>              |
| alone                | 혼자 있다, 혼자(서) | <b>honja itda, honja (seo)</b> |
| altogether, in total | 모두           | <b>modu</b>                    |
| always               | 항상           | <b>hangsang</b>                |
| ambassador           | 대사           | <b>daesa</b>                   |
| ambulance            | 앰불런스         | <b>aembyul leonseu</b>         |
| America              | 미국           | <b>Miguk</b>                   |

|                               |         |                         |
|-------------------------------|---------|-------------------------|
| American                      | 미국 사람   | <b>Miguk saram</b>      |
| amount                        | 양, 금액   | <b>yang, geumaek</b>    |
| amusement park                | 놀이 공원   | <b>nori gongwon</b>     |
| anesthetic (general)          | 전신 마취   | <b>jeonsin machwi</b>   |
| anesthetic (local)            | 국부 마취   | <b>gukbu machwi</b>     |
| angry                         | 화나다, 화난 | <b>hwanada, hwanan</b>  |
| animal                        | 동물      | <b>dongmul</b>          |
| answer the phone, to          | 전화 받다   | <b>jeonhwa batda</b>    |
| answer, respond (written), to | 답장하다    | <b>dapjang hada</b>     |
| answer, respond, to           | 대답하다    | <b>daedap hada</b>      |
| answer, response (spoken)     | 대답      | <b>daedap</b>           |
| answer, response (written)    | 답장      | <b>dapjang</b>          |
| answering machine             | 자동 응답기  | <b>jadong eungdapgi</b> |
| antibiotics                   | 항생제     | <b>hangsaengje</b>      |
| antiques                      | 골동품     | <b>goltongpum</b>       |
| antiseptic                    | 소독약     | <b>sodongyak</b>        |
| anybody, anyone               | 누구든지    | <b>nugu deunji</b>      |
| anything                      | 무엇이든지   | <b>mueosi deunji</b>    |
| anywhere                      | 어디든지    | <b>eodi deunji</b>      |
| apartment                     | 아파트     | <b>apateu</b>           |
| apologise, to                 | 사과하다    | <b>sagwa hada</b>       |
| apply (for permission), to    | 신청하다    | <b>sincheong hada</b>   |
| appointment                   | 약속, 임명  | <b>yaksok, immyeong</b> |
| April                         | 사월      | <b>Sawol</b>            |
| architecture                  | 건축      | <b>geonchuk</b>         |
| area                          | 지역      | <b>jiyeok</b>           |
| area code                     | 지역 번호   | <b>jiyeok beonho</b>    |
| arm                           | 팔       | <b>pal</b>              |
| arrange, to                   | 준비하다    | <b>junbi hada</b>       |
| arrival                       | 도착      | <b>dochak</b>           |
| arrive, to                    | 도착하다    | <b>dochak hada</b>      |
| arrow                         | 화살      | <b>hwasal</b>           |
| art                           | 예술      | <b>yesul</b>            |
| art gallery                   | 미술관     | <b>misul gwan</b>       |
| article (in newspaper)        | 기사      | <b>gisa</b>             |
| ask, to                       | 물어보다    | <b>mureo boda</b>       |
| ask for, request, to          | 부탁하다    | <b>butak hada</b>       |
| aspirin                       | 아스피린    | <b>aseu pirin</b>       |
| assault                       | 폭행      | <b>pokhaeng</b>         |
| at home                       | 집에      | <b>jibe</b>             |
| at night                      | 밤에      | <b>bame</b>             |
| at the back                   | 뒤에      | <b>dwi e</b>            |

at the front  
at the latest, no later than  
attractive

앞에  
늦어도  
매력적이다/-적인

a pe  
neujeodo  
maeryeok jeogida,  
maeryeok jeogin

August  
Australia  
Australian  
automatic  
autumn  
awake

팔월  
호주  
호주 사람  
자동  
가을  
깨어 있는

Parwol  
Hoju  
Hoju saram  
jadong  
ga eul  
kkae eo ineun

## B

baby  
back (part of body)  
back, rear  
backward  
bad (rotting)  
bad (terrible)  
bag  
bakery  
ball  
ballpoint pen  
banana  
bandage  
bank (finance)  
bank (river)  
bar (café)  
barbecue  
bargain, to  
baseball  
basketball  
bath  
bathroom  
battery  
beach  
beautiful (of people)  
beautiful (of places)  
beautiful (of things)  
because  
become, to  
bed

아기  
등  
뒤  
뒤로  
상하다, 상한  
나쁘다, 나쁜  
가방  
빵집  
공  
볼펜  
바나나  
붕대  
은행  
독  
카페  
바베큐  
흥정하다  
야구  
농구  
목욕  
화장실, 목욕실  
배터리, 건전지  
바닷가  
예쁘다, 예쁜  
아름답다/-다운  
멋지다, 멋진  
-기 때문에  
되다  
침대

agi  
deung  
dwi  
dwiro  
sanghada, sanghan  
nappeuda, nappeun  
gabang  
ppangjjip  
gong  
bolpen  
banana  
bungdae  
eunhaeng  
duk  
kape  
babekyu  
heungjeong hada  
yagu  
nonggu  
mogyok  
hwajangsil, mogyoksil  
baeteori, geonjeonji  
badatga  
yeppeuda, yeppeun  
areum dapda, areum daun  
meotjida, meotjin  
-gi ttaemune  
doeda  
chimdae

|                           |           |                                |
|---------------------------|-----------|--------------------------------|
| bedding, bedclothes       | 침구        | <b>chingu</b>                  |
| beef                      | 쇠고기       | <b>soegogi</b>                 |
| beer                      | 맥주        | <b>maekju</b>                  |
| before (in front of)      | 앞에        | <b>a pe</b>                    |
| before (in time)          | 전에        | <b>jeone</b>                   |
| begin, to                 | 시작하다      | <b>sijak hada</b>              |
| behind                    | 뒤에        | <b>dwi e</b>                   |
| below, downstairs         | 아래에       | <b>are e</b>                   |
| belt                      | 벨트        | <b>belteu</b>                  |
| berth                     | 침대        | <b>chimdae</b>                 |
| beside                    | 옆에        | <b>yeope</b>                   |
| better, get (improve), to | 좋아지다      | <b>joa jida</b>                |
| between                   | ...사이에    | <b>...sa ie</b>                |
| bicycle                   | 자전거       | <b>jajeon geo</b>              |
| big                       | 크다, 큰     | <b>keuda, keun</b>             |
| bill                      | 계산서       | <b>gyesanseo</b>               |
| birthday                  | 생일        | <b>saengil</b>                 |
| biscuit                   | 비스킷, 과자   | <b>biseuket, gwaja</b>         |
| bite, to                  | 물다        | <b>mulda</b>                   |
| bitter                    | 쓰다, 쓴     | <b>sseuda, sseun</b>           |
| black                     | 까말다, 까만   | <b>kkamata, kkaman</b>         |
| black and white           | 흑백        | <b>heukbaek</b>                |
| bland (taste)             | 무미하다/-한   | <b>mumi hada/-han</b>          |
| blanket                   | 담요        | <b>damyo</b>                   |
| bleed, to                 | 피를 흘리다    | <b>pireul heullida</b>         |
| blind (unable to see)     | 눈이 멀다, 눈먼 | <b>nuni meolda, nunmeon</b>    |
| blister                   | 물집        | <b>muljjip</b>                 |
| blog                      | 블로그       | <b>beullogeu</b>               |
| blood                     | 피         | <b>pi</b>                      |
| blood pressure            | 혈압        | <b>hyeorap</b>                 |
| blouse                    | 블라우스      | <b>beulla useu</b>             |
| blue                      | 파랗다, 파란   | <b>parata, paran</b>           |
| boat                      | 배         | <b>bae</b>                     |
| body                      | 몸         | <b>mom</b>                     |
| boiled                    | 끓인, 삶은    | <b>kkeurin, salmeun</b>        |
| bone                      | 뼈         | <b>ppyeo</b>                   |
| book                      | 책         | <b>chaek</b>                   |
| booked, reserved          | 예약되다, 예약된 | <b>yeyak doeda, yeyak doen</b> |
| booking office            | 예매소       | <b>yemaeso</b>                 |
| bookshop                  | 서점        | <b>seojeom</b>                 |
| bored                     | 심심하다      | <b>simsim hada</b>             |
| boring                    | 지루하다, 지루한 | <b>jiru hada, jiruhan</b>      |

|                         |           |                                |
|-------------------------|-----------|--------------------------------|
| born, to be             | 태어나다      | <b>tae eo nada</b>             |
| borrow, to              | 빌리다       | <b>billida</b>                 |
| botanic gardens         | 식물원       | <b>singmurwon</b>              |
| both                    | 둘 다       | <b>dul da</b>                  |
| bottle (wine)           | 술병        | <b>sulppyeong</b>              |
| box                     | 상자        | <b>sangja</b>                  |
| box office              | 매표소       | <b>maepyoso</b>                |
| boy                     | 소년        | <b>sonyeon</b>                 |
| boyfriend               | 남자 친구     | <b>namja chingu</b>            |
| bracelet                | 팔찌        | <b>paljji</b>                  |
| brake                   | 브레이크      | <b>beure ikeu</b>              |
| bread                   | 빵         | <b>ppang</b>                   |
| break, shatter, to      | 깨뜨리다      | <b>kkaetteu rida</b>           |
| breakfast, morning meal | 아침 식사     | <b>achim siksa</b>             |
| bridge                  | 다리        | <b>dari</b>                    |
| bring, to               | 가져오다      | <b>gajyeo oda</b>              |
| brochure                | 브로셔       | <b>beurosyeo</b>               |
| broken (of bones, etc.) | 부러지다, 부러진 | <b>bureo jida, bureo jin</b>   |
| broken (does not work)  | 고장나다/-난   | <b>gojang nada, gojang nan</b> |
| broth, soup             | 국         | <b>guk</b>                     |
| brother                 | 형제        | <b>hyeongje</b>                |
| brown                   | 갈색(의)     | <b>galsaek(ui)</b>             |
| bruise                  | 멍         | <b>meong</b>                   |
| Buddhism                | 불교        | <b>Bulgyo</b>                  |
| buffet                  | 뷔페        | <b>bwipe</b>                   |
| building                | 빌딩        | <b>bilding</b>                 |
| bun                     | 롤빵        | <b>rolppang</b>                |
| burn (injury)           | 화상        | <b>hwasang</b>                 |
| burn, to                | 태우다, 타다   | <b>tae uda, tada</b>           |
| bus                     | 버스        | <b>beoseu</b>                  |
| bus station             | 버스 정거장    | <b>beoseu jeong geojang</b>    |
| bus stop                | 버스 정류장    | <b>beoseu jeong nyujang</b>    |
| business card           | 명함        | <b>myeongham</b>               |
| business class          | 비즈니스 클래스  | <b>biji niseu keullaseu</b>    |
| business trip           | 출장        | <b>chuljang</b>                |
| busy (schedule)         | 바쁘다, 바쁜   | <b>bappeu da, bappeun</b>      |
| busy (traffic)          | 복잡하다, 복잡한 | <b>bokjap hada, bokja pan</b>  |
| but                     | 그러나, -지만  | <b>geureona, -jiman</b>        |
| butter                  | 버터        | <b>beoteo</b>                  |
| buy, to                 | 사다        | <b>sada</b>                    |

## C

|                              |             |                     |
|------------------------------|-------------|---------------------|
| cabin (boat)                 | 선실          | seonsil             |
| cake, pastry                 | 케이크         | ke ikeu             |
| call (phone call)            | 전화          | jeonhwa             |
| call, phone, to              | 전화하다        | jeonhwa hada        |
| called, named                | 불리다, 불리는    | bullida, bulli neun |
| camera                       | 카메라         | kamera              |
| can, be able to              | -(으)ㄹ 수 있다  | -(eu)l su itda      |
| can, may                     | -아/어도 좋다/되다 | -a/eodo jota/doeda  |
| cancel, to                   | 취소하다        | chwisohada          |
| cap                          | 모자          | moja                |
| capable of, to be            | -(으)ㄹ 수 있다  | -(eu)l su itda      |
| car, automobile              | 자동차         | jadongcha           |
| car trouble                  | 차량 고장       | charyang gojang     |
| cardigan                     | 카디간         | kadigan             |
| Careful!                     | 조심하세요!      | Josim haseyo!       |
| carpet                       | 카펫          | kapeteu             |
| cartridge                    | 카트리지        | kateuritji          |
| cash, money                  | 현금          | hyeongeum           |
| cash card                    | 현금 카드       | hyeongeum kadeu     |
| cash desk                    | 계산대         | gyesan dae          |
| cash machine                 | 현금 지급기      | hyeongeum jigeupgi  |
| casino                       | 카지노         | kajino              |
| cat                          | 고양이         | goyangi             |
| catalogue                    | 카탈로그        | katal logeu         |
| cause                        | 원인          | wonin               |
| CD                           | 씨디          | Ssi Di              |
| CD-ROM                       | 씨디-롬        | Ssi Di Rom          |
| celebrate, to                | 축하하다        | chukha hada         |
| cemetery                     | 공동묘지        | gongdong myoji      |
| centimeter                   | 센티미터        | senti miteo         |
| central heating              | 중앙 난방       | jungang nanbang     |
| center (middle)              | 중앙, 가운데     | jungang, ga unde    |
| center (of city)             | (시내) 중심지    | (sinae) jungsimji   |
| chair                        | 의자          | uija                |
| change (money)               | 잔돈          | jandon              |
| change (trains)              | 바꿔타다        | bakkwo tada         |
| change, exchange (money), to | 환전하다        | hwanjeon hada       |
| change, swap, to             | 바꾸다         | bakkuda             |
| charter flight               | 전세기 편       | jeonsegi pyeon      |
| chat, to                     | 이야기하다       | iyagi hada          |
| cheap                        | 싸다, 싼       | ssada, ssan         |



|                      |            |                                       |
|----------------------|------------|---------------------------------------|
| check in             | 체크인하다      | <b>chekeu in hada</b>                 |
| check out            | 체크아웃하다     | <b>chekeu aut hada</b>                |
| check, cheque        | 수표         | <b>supyo</b>                          |
| check, verify, to    | 체크하다       | <b>chekeu hada</b>                    |
| cheers!              | 건배!        | <b>Geonbae!</b>                       |
| chef                 | 요리사        | <b>yorisa</b>                         |
| chess                | 체스         | <b>cheseu</b>                         |
| child                | 아이/애, 어린이  | <b>a i/ae, eorini</b>                 |
| chili paste          | 고추장        | <b>gochujang</b>                      |
| chin                 | 턱          | <b>teok</b>                           |
| China                | 중국         | <b>Jungguk</b>                        |
| chocolate            | 초콜렛        | <b>chokollet</b>                      |
| choose, to           | 선택하다       | <b>seontaek hada</b>                  |
| Christianity         | 기독교        | <b>Gidokgyo</b>                       |
| church               | 교회         | <b>gyohoe</b>                         |
| cigar                | 시가         | <b>sigae</b>                          |
| cigarette            | 담배         | <b>dambae</b>                         |
| cinema               | 극장         | <b>geukjang</b>                       |
| circus               | 서커스        | <b>seokeoseu</b>                      |
| citizen              | 시민         | <b>simin</b>                          |
| city                 | 도시         | <b>dosi</b>                           |
| clean                | 깨끗하다, 깨끗한  | <b>kkaekkeut hada,<br/>kkaekeutan</b> |
| clean, to            | 청소하다       | <b>cheongso hada</b>                  |
| clearance (sale)     | 세일         | <b>seil</b>                           |
| climate              | 기후         | <b>gihu</b>                           |
| clock                | 시계         | <b>sigye</b>                          |
| closed (shop)        | 끝나다, 끝난    | <b>kkeun nada, kkeunnan</b>           |
| closed off (road)    | (도로가) 차단되다 | <b>(do ro ga) chadan doeda</b>        |
| cloth                | 옷감         | <b>otgam</b>                          |
| clothes, clothing    | 옷          | <b>ot</b>                             |
| cloudy, overcast     | 흐리다, 흐린    | <b>heurida, heurin</b>                |
| coat, overcoat       | 코트         | <b>koteu</b>                          |
| cocoa                | 코코아        | <b>kokoa</b>                          |
| coffee               | 커피         | <b>keopi</b>                          |
| coin                 | 동전         | <b>dongjeon</b>                       |
| cold (not hot)       | 춥다, 추운     | <b>chupda, chu un</b>                 |
| cold, flu            | 감기         | <b>gamgi</b>                          |
| collar               | 칼라         | <b>kalla</b>                          |
| colleague, co-worker | 동료         | <b>dongnyo</b>                        |
| collide, to          | 충돌하다       | <b>chungdol hada</b>                  |
| collision            | 충돌         | <b>chungdol</b>                       |

|                                         |            |                                             |
|-----------------------------------------|------------|---------------------------------------------|
| color                                   | 색          | <b>saek</b>                                 |
| comb                                    | 빗          | <b>bit</b>                                  |
| come, to                                | 오다         | <b>oda</b>                                  |
| company, firm                           | 회사         | <b>hoesa</b>                                |
| complaint                               | 불평         | <b>bulpyeong</b>                            |
| completely                              | 완전히        | <b>wanjeonhi</b>                            |
| compliment                              | 칭찬         | <b>chingchan</b>                            |
| computer                                | 컴퓨터        | <b>keompyuteo</b>                           |
| computer game                           | 컴퓨터 게임     | <b>keompyuteo geim/<br/>computer geim</b>   |
| concert                                 | 콘서트        | <b>konseoteu</b>                            |
| concierge                               | 수위         | <b>suwi</b>                                 |
| concussion                              | 뇌진탕        | <b>noejintang</b>                           |
| condom                                  | 콘돔         | <b>kondom</b>                               |
| confectionery                           | 과자         | <b>gwaja</b>                                |
| Congratulations!                        | 축하해요!      | <b>Chukha haeyo!</b>                        |
| connection (transport)                  | 연결편        | <b>yeongyeol pyeon</b>                      |
| consulate                               | 영사관        | <b>yeongsagwan</b>                          |
| consultation (by doctor)                | 진찰         | <b>jinchal</b>                              |
| contact lens                            | 콘택트 렌즈     | <b>kontaekteu renjeu</b>                    |
| contagious                              | 전염되다, 전염되는 | <b>jeonyeom doeda,<br/>jeonyeom doeneun</b> |
| contraceptive pill                      | 피임약        | <b>pi imyak</b>                             |
| cook (person)                           | 요리사        | <b>yorisa</b>                               |
| cook, to                                | 요리하다       | <b>yoru hada</b>                            |
| copper                                  | 구리         | <b>guri</b>                                 |
| copy                                    | 사본, 복사     | <b>sabon, boksa</b>                         |
| copy, to                                | 복사하다       | <b>boksa hada</b>                           |
| corner                                  | 코너         | <b>koneo</b>                                |
| correct, to                             | 고치다        | <b>gochida</b>                              |
| corridor                                | 복도         | <b>bokdo</b>                                |
| cosmetics                               | 화장품        | <b>hwajangpum</b>                           |
| costume                                 | 의상         | <b>uisang</b>                               |
| cotton wool                             | 솜          | <b>som</b>                                  |
| cough                                   | 기침         | <b>gichim</b>                               |
| cough, to                               | 기침하다       | <b>gichim hada</b>                          |
| counter (for paying,<br>buying tickets) | 카운트        | <b>kaunteu</b>                              |
| country (nation)                        | 나라         | <b>nara</b>                                 |
| country (rural area)                    | 시골         | <b>sigol</b>                                |
| country code                            | 국가 번호      | <b>gukga beonho</b>                         |

|                                |         |                           |
|--------------------------------|---------|---------------------------|
| course of treatment            | 치료      | <b>chiryo</b>             |
| cousin                         | 사촌      | <b>sachon</b>             |
| cream                          | 크림      | <b>keurim</b>             |
| credit card                    | 신용카드    | <b>sinyong kadeu</b>      |
| crime                          | 범죄      | <b>beomjoe</b>            |
| cross, angry                   | 화나다, 화난 | <b>hwanada, hwa nan</b>   |
| cross (road, river), to        | 건너다     | <b>geonneoda</b>          |
| crosswalk, pedestrian crossing | 건널목     | <b>geonneol mok</b>       |
| crutch                         | 목발      | <b>mokbal</b>             |
| cry, to                        | 울다      | <b>ulda</b>               |
| cubic metre                    | 입방미터    | <b>ipbang miteo</b>       |
| cup                            | 컵       | <b>keop</b>               |
| curly                          | 곱슬하다/-한 | <b>gopseul hada/-han</b>  |
| current (electric)             | 전류      | <b>jeollyu</b>            |
| curtains                       | 커튼      | <b>keoteun</b>            |
| cushion                        | 쿠션      | <b>kusyeon</b>            |
| custom (tradition)             | 관습      | <b>gwanseup</b>           |
| customs                        | 세관      | <b>segwan</b>             |
| cut (injury)                   | 상처      | <b>sangcheo</b>           |
| cut, to                        | 자르다     | <b>jareda</b>             |
| cycling                        | 자전거 타기  | <b>jajeongeog tagi</b>    |
| Cyworld                        | 싸이월드    | <b>Ssaiwoldeu/Cyworld</b> |

## D

|                      |                    |                                            |
|----------------------|--------------------|--------------------------------------------|
| dairy products       | 유제품                | <b>yujepum</b>                             |
| damage               | 손해, 손상             | <b>sonhae, sonsang</b>                     |
| dance                | 춤                  | <b>chum</b>                                |
| dance, to            | 춤추다                | <b>chumchuda</b>                           |
| danger               | 위험                 | <b>wiheom</b>                              |
| dangerous            | 위험하다, 위험한          | <b>wiheom hada, wiheom han</b>             |
| dark                 | 어둡다/진하다,<br>어두운/진한 | <b>eodupda/jinhada,<br/>eodu un/jinhan</b> |
| date (of the month)  | 날짜                 | <b>naljja</b>                              |
| date of birth        | 생년월일               | <b>saengnyeon woril</b>                    |
| daughter             | 딸                  | <b>ttal</b>                                |
| day                  | 날, 낮               | <b>nal, nat</b>                            |
| day after tomorrow   | 모레                 | <b>mo re</b>                               |
| day before yesterday | 그저께                | <b>geujeokke</b>                           |
| dead                 | 죽다, 죽은             | <b>jukda, jugeun</b>                       |
| deaf                 | 귀가 먹다/먹은           | <b>gwiga meokda/meogeun</b>                |

|                               |            |                              |
|-------------------------------|------------|------------------------------|
| decaffeinated                 | 카페인 없는     | <b>kapein eomneun</b>        |
| December                      | 십이월        | <b>Sibiwol</b>               |
| declare (customs)             | 신고         | <b>singo</b>                 |
| deep                          | 깊다, 깊은     | <b>gipda, gipeun</b>         |
| deep freeze, freezer          | 냉동고        | <b>naengdonggo</b>           |
| degrees (temperature)         | 도          | <b>do</b>                    |
| delay                         | 지연         | <b>jiyeon</b>                |
| delete, to                    | 삭제하다, 지우다  | <b>sakje hada, jiuda</b>     |
| delicious                     | 맛있다, 맛있는   | <b>masitda, masin neun</b>   |
| dentist                       | 치과(의사)     | <b>chikkwa(uisa)</b>         |
| department store              | 백화점        | <b>baekhwajeom</b>           |
| departure                     | 출발         | <b>chulbal</b>               |
| deposit (for safekeeping), to | 보관하다       | <b>bogwan hada</b>           |
| deposit (in the bank), to     | 예금하다       | <b>yegeum hada</b>           |
| dessert                       | 디저트        | <b>dijeoteu</b>              |
| destination                   | 목적지        | <b>mokjeokji</b>             |
| dial (telephone), to          | 전화하다       | <b>jeonhwa hada</b>          |
| dictionary                    | 사전         | <b>sajeon</b>                |
| diet                          | 식이요법       | <b>sigi yobeop</b>           |
| difficulty                    | 어려움        | <b>eo ryeo um</b>            |
| dinner, evening meal          | 저녁 식사      | <b>jeonyeok siksa</b>        |
| direct flight                 | 직항         | <b>jikhang</b>               |
| direction                     | 방향         | <b>banghyang</b>             |
| directly                      | 직접         | <b>jikjeop</b>               |
| dirty                         | 더럽다, 더러운   | <b>deoreopda, deoreo un</b>  |
| disabled person               | 장애인        | <b>jangaein</b>              |
| discount                      | 디스카운트      | <b>diseuka unteu</b>         |
| discuss, to                   | 의논하다       | <b>uinon hada</b>            |
| discussion                    | 의논         | <b>uinon</b>                 |
| dish (particular food)        | 요리         | <b>yoru</b>                  |
| dish of the day               | 오늘의 스페셜    | <b>oneurui seupesyeol</b>    |
| disinfectant                  | 소독제        | <b>sodokje</b>               |
| dislike, to                   | 싫어하다       | <b>sireo hada</b>            |
| distance                      | 거리         | <b>geori</b>                 |
| distilled water               | 증류수        | <b>jeungnyusu</b>            |
| disturb, to                   | 방해하다       | <b>banghae hada</b>          |
| disturbance                   | 방해         | <b>banghae</b>               |
| dive, to                      | 다이빙하다      | <b>daibing hada</b>          |
| diving                        | 다이빙        | <b>daibing</b>               |
| divorced                      | 이혼하다, 이혼한  | <b>ihon hada, ihonhan</b>    |
| dizzy                         | 어지럽다, 어지러운 | <b>ejireop da, ejireo un</b> |
| do not disturb                | 방해하지 마세요   | <b>banghae haji maseyo</b>   |

|                           |            |                            |
|---------------------------|------------|----------------------------|
| do, perform an action, to | 하다         | <b>hada</b>                |
| doctor                    | 의사         | <b>uisa</b>                |
| dog                       | 개          | <b>gae</b>                 |
| domestic (flight)         | 국내선        | <b>gungnae seon</b>        |
| Don't!                    | 그러지 마세요!   | <b>Geureoji maseyo!</b>    |
| done (cooked)             | 잘 익다, 잘 익은 | <b>jal ikda, jal igeun</b> |
| door                      | 문          | <b>mun</b>                 |
| double                    | 두 배        | <b>du bae</b>              |
| down, downward            | 아래로        | <b>araero</b>              |
| drapes, curtains          | 커튼         | <b>keoteun</b>             |
| dream, to                 | 꿈꾸다        | <b>kkumkkuda</b>           |
| dressing table            | 화장대        | <b>hwajangdae</b>          |
| drink (alcoholic)         | 술          | <b>sul</b>                 |
| drink (refreshment)       | 음료(수)      | <b>eumnyo(su)</b>          |
| drink, to                 | 마시다        | <b>masida</b>              |
| drinking water            | 식수         | <b>siksu</b>               |
| drive (a car), to         | 운전하다       | <b>unjeon hada</b>         |
| driver                    | 운전사        | <b>unjeon sa</b>           |
| drugstore, pharmacy       | 약국         | <b>yak guk</b>             |
| dry                       | 마르다, 마른    | <b>mareuda, mareun</b>     |
| dry, to                   | 말리다        | <b>mallida</b>             |
| dry-clean                 | 드라이 클리닝    | <b>deurai keullining</b>   |
| duck                      | 오리         | <b>ori</b>                 |
| during, for               | ...동안      | <b>...dongan</b>           |
| duty (import tax)         | 관세         | <b>gwanse</b>              |
| DVD                       | 디비디        | <b>Di Bi Di</b>            |

## E

|                 |         |                      |
|-----------------|---------|----------------------|
| ear             | 귀       | <b>gwi</b>           |
| early           | 이르다, 이른 | <b>ireuda, ireun</b> |
| earth, soil     | 흙       | <b>heuk</b>          |
| east            | 동쪽      | <b>dongjjok</b>      |
| easy            | 쉽다, 쉬운  | <b>swipda, swiun</b> |
| eat, to         | 먹다      | <b>meokda</b>        |
| economy class   | 이코노미석   | <b>ikono miseok</b>  |
| egg             | 계란, 알   | <b>gyeran, al</b>    |
| electric        | 전기(의)   | <b>jeongi(ui)</b>    |
| electricity     | 전기      | <b>jeongi</b>        |
| electronic      | 전자(의)   | <b>jeonja(ui)</b>    |
| elevator        | 엘리베이터   | <b>elli beiteo</b>   |
| email (message) | 이메일     | <b>imeil</b>         |

|                                |             |                                    |
|--------------------------------|-------------|------------------------------------|
| email address                  | 이메일 주소      | <b>imeil juso</b>                  |
| embassy                        | 대사관         | <b>daesagwan</b>                   |
| emergency                      | 응급(사태)      | <b>eunggeup (satae)</b>            |
| emergency exit                 | 비상구         | <b>bisanggu</b>                    |
| emergency room                 | 응급실         | <b>eunggeupsil</b>                 |
| empty                          | 텅 비다/빈      | <b>teong bida/bin</b>              |
| engaged (telephone)            | 통화중이다/-중인   | <b>tonghwa jungida/-jungin</b>     |
| engaged (to be married)        | 약혼하다/-한     | <b>yakhon hada/-han</b>            |
| England                        | 영국          | <b>Yeongguk</b>                    |
| English                        | 영어          | <b>Yeongeo</b>                     |
| enjoy, to                      | 즐기다         | <b>jeulgida</b>                    |
| enquire, to                    | 물어보다        | <b>mureo boda</b>                  |
| envelope                       | 봉투          | <b>bongtu</b>                      |
| escalator                      | 에스컬레이터      | <b>eseu keolle iteo</b>            |
| essential                      | 필수적이다, 필수적인 | <b>pilsu jeogida, pilsu jeogin</b> |
| evening                        | 저녁          | <b>jeonyeok</b>                    |
| event                          | 행사          | <b>haengsa</b>                     |
| every                          | 모든, 매...    | <b>modeun, mae...</b>              |
| everybody, everyone            | 모든 사람       | <b>modeun saram</b>                |
| everything                     | 모든 것        | <b>modeun geot</b>                 |
| everywhere                     | 어디든지, 모든 곳  | <b>eodi deunji, modeun got</b>     |
| examine, to                    | 검토하다, 진찰하다  | <b>geomto hada, jinchal hada</b>   |
| excellent                      | 우수하다, 우수한   | <b>usu hada, usu han</b>           |
| exchange (money, opinions), to | 교환하다        | <b>gyohwan hada</b>                |
| exchange rate                  | 환율          | <b>hwannyul</b>                    |
| Excuse me!                     | 실례합니다!      | <b>Sillye hamnida!</b>             |
| Excuse me! (apology)           | 미안합니다!      | <b>Mian hamnida!</b>               |
| exhibition                     | 전시회         | <b>jeonsihoe</b>                   |
| exit, way out                  | 출구          | <b>chulgu</b>                      |
| expense                        | 비용          | <b>biyong</b>                      |
| expensive                      | 비싸다, 비싼     | <b>bissada, bissan</b>             |
| explain, to                    | 설명하다        | <b>seolmyeong hada</b>             |
| express, state, to             | 표현하다        | <b>pyohyeon hada</b>               |
| eye                            | 눈           | <b>nun</b>                         |

## F

|               |      |                   |
|---------------|------|-------------------|
| face          | 얼굴   | <b>eolgul</b>     |
| Facebook      | 페이스북 | <b>Pei seubuk</b> |
| factory       | 공장   | <b>gong jang</b>  |
| fall (season) | 가을   | <b>ga eul</b>     |

|                               |         |                   |
|-------------------------------|---------|-------------------|
| fall over, to                 | 넘어지다    | neomeo jida       |
| family                        | 가족      | gajok             |
| fan (admirer)                 | 팬       | paen              |
| fan (for cooling)             | 부채      | buchae            |
| far away                      | 멀다, 먼   | meolda, meon      |
| fashion                       | 패션      | paesyeon          |
| fast, rapid                   | 빠르다, 빠른 | ppareuda, ppareun |
| father                        | 아버지     | abeoji            |
| fault                         | 잘못      | jalmot            |
| fax                           | 팩스      | paekseu           |
| February                      | 이월      | Iwol              |
| feel like                     | -고 싶다   | -go sipda         |
| feel, to                      | 느끼다     | neukkida          |
| female                        | 여성      | yeoseong          |
| ferry                         | 배       | bae               |
| fever                         | 열       | yeol              |
| fill out (form), to           | 작성하다    | jakseong hada     |
| fill, to                      | 채우다     | chae uda          |
| filter                        | 필터      | pilteo            |
| fine (good)                   | 좋다, 좋은  | jota, joeun       |
| fine (money)                  | 벌금      | beolgeum          |
| finger                        | 손가락     | sonkkarak         |
| fire                          | 불       | bul               |
| fire alarm                    | 화재 경보   | hwajae gyeongbo   |
| fire department, fire service | 소방서     | sobangseo         |
| fire escape                   | 비상구     | bisangu           |
| fire extinguisher             | 소화기     | sohwagi           |
| first                         | 첫 번째    | cheot beonjjae    |
| first aid                     | 응급 조치   | eunggeup jochi    |
| first class                   | 일등석     | ildeungseok       |
| fish (live)                   | 물고기     | mulkkogi          |
| fish (food)                   | 생선      | saengseon         |
| fishing                       | 낚시      | naksi             |
| fitness club                  | 헬스 클럽   | helseu keulleop   |
| fitting room                  | 탈의실     | taruisil          |
| fix (repair), to              | 고치다     | gochida           |
| flag                          | 깃발      | gitbal            |
| flavor                        | 맛       | mat               |
| flea market                   | 벼룩시장    | byeoruk sijang    |
| flight                        | 운항      | unhang            |
| flight number                 | 운항 번호   | unhang beonho     |
| flood                         | 홍수      | hongsu            |

|                        |            |                                    |
|------------------------|------------|------------------------------------|
| floor                  | 마루, 층      | <b>maru, cheung</b>                |
| flour                  | 밀가루        | <b>milkkaru</b>                    |
| flu                    | 독감         | <b>dokgam</b>                      |
| flush (toilet), to     | 변기 물을 내리다  | <b>byeongi mureul naerida</b>      |
| fly, to                | 날다         | <b>nalda</b>                       |
| fog                    | 안개         | <b>angae</b>                       |
| foggy                  | 안개끼다, 안개끼  | <b>angae kkida, angae kkin</b>     |
| folklore               | 민담         | <b>mindam</b>                      |
| follow behind, to      | 뒤따라가다      | <b>dwitta ragada</b>               |
| food (meal)            | 음식         | <b>eumsik</b>                      |
| food poisoning         | 식중독        | <b>sikjungdok</b>                  |
| foot                   | 발          | <b>bal</b>                         |
| forbidden              | 금지되다, 금지된  | <b>geumji doeda, geumji doen</b>   |
| forehead               | 이마         | <b>ima</b>                         |
| foreign                | 외국(의)      | <b>oeguk(ui)</b>                   |
| foreigner              | 외국인        | <b>oegugin</b>                     |
| forget, to             | 잊어버리다      | <b>ijeobeo rida</b>                |
| fork                   | 포크         | <b>pokeu</b>                       |
| form (application)     | 신청서        | <b>sincheongseo</b>                |
| form (to fill out), to | 작성하다       | <b>jakseong hada</b>               |
| free (no charge)       | 무료(의)      | <b>muryo(ui)</b>                   |
| free (unoccupied)      | 비어있다, 비어있는 | <b>bieo itda, bieo inneun</b>      |
| free time              | 자유시간       | <b>jayu sigan</b>                  |
| fresh                  | 신선하다, 신선한  | <b>sinseon hada, sinseon han</b>   |
| Friday                 | 금요일        | <b>Geumyoil</b>                    |
| fried                  | 튀긴         | <b>twigin</b>                      |
| friend                 | 친구         | <b>chingu</b>                      |
| friendly               | 친절하다, 친절한  | <b>chinjeol hada, chinjeol han</b> |
| frightened             | 겁먹다, 겁먹은   | <b>geommeokda, geommeo geun</b>    |
| frozen                 | 얼다, 언      | <b>eolda, eon</b>                  |
| fruit                  | 과일         | <b>gwa il</b>                      |
| fruit juice            | 과일 주스      | <b>gwa il juseu</b>                |
| full                   | 가득 차다/찬    | <b>gadeuk chada, gadeuk chan</b>   |
| fun, to have           | 재미있게 보내다   | <b>jaemi itge bonae da</b>         |

## G

|         |    |                |
|---------|----|----------------|
| gallery | 화랑 | <b>hwarang</b> |
|---------|----|----------------|



|                               |                   |                                              |
|-------------------------------|-------------------|----------------------------------------------|
| game                          | 게임                | <b>geim</b>                                  |
| garage (for repairs)          | 정비소               | <b>jeongbiso</b>                             |
| garbage                       | 쓰레기               | <b>sseuregi</b>                              |
| garden, yard                  | 정원                | <b>jeongwon</b>                              |
| garment                       | 옷                 | <b>ot</b>                                    |
| gas station                   | 주유소               | <b>juyuso</b>                                |
| gate                          | 문                 | <b>mun</b>                                   |
| gem                           | 보석                | <b>boseok</b>                                |
| gender                        | 성별                | <b>seongbyeol</b>                            |
| genuine                       | 진짜(의)             | <b>jinjja(ui)</b>                            |
| get off (transport), to       | 내리다               | <b>naerida</b>                               |
| get on (transport), to        | 타다                | <b>tada</b>                                  |
| gift                          | 선물                | <b>seonmul</b>                               |
| girl                          | 소녀                | <b>sonyeo</b>                                |
| girlfriend                    | 여자 친구             | <b>yeoja chingu</b>                          |
| give, to                      | 주다                | <b>juda</b>                                  |
| given name                    | 이름                | <b>ireum</b>                                 |
| glad                          | 기쁘다, 기쁜           | <b>gippeuda, gippeun</b>                     |
| glass (for drinking)          | 컵                 | <b>keop</b>                                  |
| glass (material)              | 유리                | <b>yuri</b>                                  |
| glasses, spectacles           | 안경                | <b>angyeong</b>                              |
| glossy (photo)                | 광택지               | <b>gwangtaekji</b>                           |
| gloves                        | 장갑                | <b>janggap</b>                               |
| go back , to                  | 돌아가다              | <b>dora gada</b>                             |
| go out, exit, to              | 나가다               | <b>nagada</b>                                |
| go to bed, to                 | 자다/자러가다           | <b>jada/jareo gada</b>                       |
| go, to                        | 가다                | <b>gada</b>                                  |
| gold                          | 금                 | <b>geum</b>                                  |
| good                          | 좋다, 좋은            | <b>jota, joeun</b>                           |
| good afternoon                | 안녕하세요.            | <b>annyeong haseyo</b>                       |
| good evening                  | 안녕하세요.            | <b>annyeong haseyo</b>                       |
| Good luck!                    | 행운을 빕니다!          | <b>Haeng uneul binnida!</b>                  |
| good morning                  | 안녕하세요.            | <b>annyeong haseyo</b>                       |
| good night                    | 안녕히 주무세요.         | <b>annyeonghi jumu seyo</b>                  |
| goodbye (to a person leaving) | 안녕히 가세요           | <b>annyeonghi gaseyo</b>                     |
| goodbye (to a person staying) | 안녕히 계세요           | <b>annyeonghi gyeseyo</b>                    |
| gram                          | 그램                | <b>geuraem</b>                               |
| grandfather                   | 할아버지, 조부          | <b>harabeoji, jobu</b>                       |
| grandmother                   | 할머니, 조모           | <b>halmeoni, jomo</b>                        |
| grapes                        | 포도                | <b>podo</b>                                  |
| graze (injury)                | 찰과상               | <b>chalgwasang</b>                           |
| greasy                        | 기름기 많다,<br>기름기 많은 | <b>gireumkki manta,<br/>gireumkki maneun</b> |

green  
greet, to  
greetings  
grey  
grilled  
groceries  
group  
guest house  
guide (book)  
  
guide (person)  
guided tour  
guilty, to feel  
  
gym  
gynaecologist

푸르다, 푸른  
인사하다  
인사말  
회색(의)  
굽다, 구운  
식품  
그룹  
여관  
안내서  
  
가이드  
가이드가 있는 투어  
죄책감을 느끼다  
  
짐  
산부인과 의사

**pureuda, pureun**  
**insa hada**  
**insa mal**  
**hoesaek(ui)**  
**gupda, guun**  
**sikpum**  
**geurup**  
**yeogwan**  
**annaeseo**  
  
**gaideu**  
**gaideuga inneun tueo**  
**joechaek gameul**  
**neukkida**  
  
**jim**  
**sanbu inkkwa uisa**

## H

hair  
haircut  
hairdresser  
half, half full  
hand  
hand brake  
hand luggage  
handbag  
handkerchief  
happy  
  
Happy birthday!  
Happy New Year!  
  
harbor  
hard (difficult)  
hard (firm)  
hardware store  
hat  
have to, must  
have, own, to  
he, him

머리(카락)  
컷트  
미용사  
반  
손  
손 브레이크  
휴대 수하물  
핸드백  
손수건  
행복하다, 행복한  
  
생일 축하합니다!  
새해 복 많이  
받으세요!  
  
항구  
어렵다, 어려운  
단단하다, 단단한  
철물점  
모자  
-아/어야 하다  
있다  
그

**meori (karak)**  
**keoteu**  
**miyongsa**  
**ban**  
**son**  
**son beure ikeu**  
**hyudae suhamul**  
**haendeubaek**  
**sonsugeon**  
**haengbok hada,**  
**haengbokhan**  
  
**Saengil chukha hamnida!**  
**Saehae bok mani**  
**badeu seyo!**  
  
**hanggu**  
**eoryeopda, eoryeoun**  
**dandan hada, dandan han**  
**cheolmuljeom**  
**moja**  
**-a/eoya hada**  
**itda**  
**geu**

|                    |            |                                               |
|--------------------|------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| head               | 머리         | <b>meori</b>                                  |
| headache           | 두통         | <b>dutong</b>                                 |
| healthy            | 건강하다, 건강한  | <b>geongang hada, geongang han</b>            |
| hear, to           | 듣다         | <b>deutda</b>                                 |
| hearing aid        | 보청기        | <b>bocheonggi</b>                             |
| heart              | 심장, 마음     | <b>simjang, ma eum</b>                        |
| heart attack       | 심장 마비      | <b>simjang mabi</b>                           |
| heat, to           | 데우다        | <b>deuda</b>                                  |
| heater             | 히터         | <b>hiteo</b>                                  |
| heavy              | 무겁다, 무거운   | <b>mugeopda, mugeoun</b>                      |
| Hello! (on phone)  | 여보세요!      | <b>Yeoboseyo!</b>                             |
| Hello, Hi          | 안녕하세요      | <b>Annyeong haseyo</b>                        |
| Help!              | 도와주세요!     | <b>Dowa juseyo!</b>                           |
| help yourself      | 마음대로 드세요   | <b>maeum daero deuseyo</b>                    |
| her                | 그녀의        | <b>geu nyeoui</b>                             |
| here               | 여기, 이리(로)  | <b>yeogi, iri(ro)</b>                         |
| hers               | 그녀의 것      | <b>geunyeoui geot</b>                         |
| high               | 높다, 높은     | <b>nopda, nopeun</b>                          |
| high tide          | 밀물         | <b>milmul</b>                                 |
| highway            | 고속도로       | <b>gosok doro</b>                             |
| hiking             | 등산         | <b>deungsan</b>                               |
| hire, to           | 고용하다       | <b>goyong hada</b>                            |
| his                | 그의, 그의 것   | <b>geu ui, geu ui geot</b>                    |
| hobby              | 취미         | <b>chwimi</b>                                 |
| holiday (public)   | 휴일         | <b>hyuil</b>                                  |
| holiday (vacation) | 휴가         | <b>hyuga</b>                                  |
| home, house        | 집          | <b>jip</b>                                    |
| homesickness       | 향수병        | <b>hyangsuppyeong</b>                         |
| honest             | 정직하다, 정직한  | <b>jeongjik hada, jeongjikan</b>              |
| horizontal         | 수평이다, 수평인  | <b>supyeongida, supyeongin</b>                |
| horrible           | 형편없다, 형편없는 | <b>hyeongpyeo neopda, hyeongpyeo neomneun</b> |
| hospital           | 병원         | <b>byeongwon</b>                              |
| hot (spicy)        | 맵다, 매운     | <b>maepda, maeun</b>                          |
| hot (temperature)  | 덥다, 더운     | <b>deopda, deoun</b>                          |
| hot spring         | 온천         | <b>oncheon</b>                                |
| hot-water bottle   | 보온병        | <b>bo onbyeong</b>                            |
| hotel              | 호텔         | <b>hotel</b>                                  |
| hour               | 시간         | <b>sigan</b>                                  |
| house              | 집          | <b>jip</b>                                    |
| How are you?       | 안녕하세요?     | <b>Annyeong haseyo?</b>                       |

|           |           |                                |
|-----------|-----------|--------------------------------|
| How far?  | 얼마나 멀어요   | <b>Eolmana meoreoyo?</b>       |
| How long? | 얼마나 오래요?  | <b>Eolmana oraeyo?</b>         |
| How many? | 얼마나 많아요?  | <b>Eolmana maniyo?</b>         |
| How much? | 얼마예요?     | <b>Eolma yeyo?</b>             |
| How old?  | 몇 살이에요?   | <b>Myeot sari eyo?</b>         |
| How?      | 어떻게요?     | <b>Eotteoke yo?</b>            |
| however   | 그러나       | <b>geureona</b>                |
| humid     | 무덥다, 무더운  | <b>mudeopda, mudeoun</b>       |
| hungry    | 배고프다, 배고픈 | <b>baego peuda, baego peun</b> |
| Hurry up! | 빨리요!      | <b>Ppalliyo!</b>               |
| husband   | 남편        | <b>nampyeon</b>                |

## I

|                        |            |                                    |
|------------------------|------------|------------------------------------|
| I, me                  | 나, 내, 저, 제 | <b>na, nae, jeo, je</b>            |
| ice cream              | 아이스 크림     | <b>aiseu keurim</b>                |
| idea                   | 생각         | <b>saenggak</b>                    |
| identification (card)  | 신분증        | <b>sinbunjeung</b>                 |
| if                     | 만일 -(으)면   | <b>manil -(eu)myeon</b>            |
| ill, sick              | 아프다, 아픈    | <b>apeuda, apeun</b>               |
| illness                | 병          | <b>byeong</b>                      |
| imagine, to            | 상상하다       | <b>sangsang hada</b>               |
| immediately            | 곧          | <b>got</b>                         |
| import duty            | 관세         | <b>gwanse</b>                      |
| important              | 중요하다, 중요한  | <b>jungyo hada, jungyo han</b>     |
| impossible             | 불가능하다/-한   | <b>bulganeung hada/-han</b>        |
| in order that, so that | -기 위해서     | <b>-gi wihaeseo</b>                |
| in the evening         | 저녁에        | <b>jeonyeoge</b>                   |
| in the morning         | 아침에        | <b>achime</b>                      |
| in, at (place)         | ...에(서)    | <b>...e(seo)</b>                   |
| including              | 포함하다, 포함하는 | <b>poham hada, poham haneun</b>    |
| indicate, to           | 가리키다       | <b>gari kida</b>                   |
| indigestion            | 소화불량       | <b>sohwa bullyang</b>              |
| inexpensive            | 싸다, 싼      | <b>ssada, ssan</b>                 |
| infection              | 감염         | <b>gamyem</b>                      |
| inflammation           | 염증         | <b>yeomjeung</b>                   |
| information office     | 안내소        | <b>annaeso</b>                     |
| injection              | 주사         | <b>jusa</b>                        |
| injured                | 다치다, 다친    | <b>dachida, dachin</b>             |
| innocent               | 결백하다, 결백한  | <b>gyeolbae kada, gyeolbae kan</b> |

|                       |            |                                 |
|-----------------------|------------|---------------------------------|
| insane                | 미치다, 미친    | <b>michida, michin</b>          |
| insect repellent      | 방충제        | <b>bangchungje</b>              |
| inside                | 안쪽         | <b>anjjok</b>                   |
| instructions          | 사용 설명서     | <b>sayong seolmyeongseo</b>     |
| insurance             | 보험         | <b>boheom</b>                   |
| interested in         | 관심이 있다/있는  | <b>gwansimi itda/inneun</b>     |
| interesting           | 재미있다, 재미있는 | <b>jaemi itda, jaemi inneun</b> |
| internal              | 내부의        | <b>naebu ui</b>                 |
| Internet              | 인터넷        | <b>Inteonet/Internet</b>        |
| Internet café         | 인터넷 카페     | <b>Inteonet kape</b>            |
| interpreter           | 통역(사)      | <b>tongyeok(sa)</b>             |
| interview             | 면접         | <b>myeonjeop</b>                |
| introduce someone, to | 소개하다       | <b>sogae hada</b>               |
| invent, to            | 발명하다       | <b>balmyeong hada</b>           |
| invite, to            | 초대하다       | <b>chodae hada</b>              |
| iPad                  | 아이패드       | <b>aipae deu</b>                |
| iPhone                | 아이폰        | <b>ai pon</b>                   |
| island                | 섬          | <b>seom</b>                     |
| itch                  | 가려움증       | <b>garyeo umjeung</b>           |

## J

|                |       |                    |
|----------------|-------|--------------------|
| jack (for car) | 잭     | <b>jaek</b>        |
| jacket         | 자켓    | <b>jaket</b>       |
| January        | 일월    | <b>Irwol</b>       |
| Japan          | 일본    | <b>Ilbon</b>       |
| jaw            | 턱     | <b>teok</b>        |
| jeans          | 진     | <b>jin</b>         |
| jeweler        | 보석상   | <b>boseoksang</b>  |
| job            | 직업, 일 | <b>jigeop, il</b>  |
| jog, to        | 조깅하다  | <b>joging hada</b> |
| joke           | 농담    | <b>nongdam</b>     |
| journey        | 여행    | <b>yeohaeng</b>    |
| July           | 칠월    | <b>Chirwol</b>     |
| June           | 육월    | <b>Yugwol</b>      |

## K

|               |    |                |
|---------------|----|----------------|
| key (to room) | 열쇠 | <b>yeolsoe</b> |
| kidney        | 신장 | <b>sinjang</b> |

|                        |            |                                         |
|------------------------|------------|-----------------------------------------|
| kilogram               | 킬로그램       | <b>killo geuraem</b>                    |
| kitchen                | 부엌         | <b>bueok</b>                            |
| knee                   | 무릎         | <b>mureup</b>                           |
| knife                  | 칼          | <b>kal</b>                              |
| know, to               | 알다         | <b>alda</b>                             |
| Korea, North           | 북한         | <b>Bukhan</b>                           |
| Korea, South           | 남한         | <b>Nahan</b>                            |
| Korean                 | 한국 사람, 한국어 | <b>Hanguk saram, Hangugeo</b>           |
| Korean drama (K-drama) | 한국 드라마     | <b>Hanguk deurama/<br/>Hanguk drama</b> |
| Korean pop (K-pop)     | 한국 대중음악    | <b>Hanguk daejung eumak</b>             |

# L

|                         |                  |                                              |
|-------------------------|------------------|----------------------------------------------|
| laces (for shoes)       | 신발 끈             | <b>sinbal kkeun</b>                          |
| lake                    | 호수               | <b>hosu</b>                                  |
| lamp                    | 등                | <b>deung</b>                                 |
| land (ground)           | 땅                | <b>ttang</b>                                 |
| land (plane), to        | 착륙하다             | <b>changnyuk hada</b>                        |
| lane (of traffic)       | 차선               | <b>chaseon</b>                               |
| language                | 말, 언어            | <b>mal, eoneo</b>                            |
| large                   | 크다, 큰            | <b>keuda, keun</b>                           |
| last (final)            | 마지막이다, 마지막       | <b>maji magida, majimak</b>                  |
| last night              | 지난 밤             | <b>jinan bam</b>                             |
| later                   | 나중에              | <b>najunge</b>                               |
| laugh, to               | 웃다               | <b>utda</b>                                  |
| law, legislation        | 법                | <b>beop</b>                                  |
| lawyer                  | 변호사              | <b>byeonhosa</b>                             |
| leak, to                | 새다               | <b>saeda</b>                                 |
| leave, depart, to       | 떠나다              | <b>tteonada</b>                              |
| left behind             | 남다               | <b>namda</b>                                 |
| left-hand side          | 왼쪽               | <b>oenjjok</b>                               |
| leg                     | 다리               | <b>dari</b>                                  |
| leisure                 | 레저               | <b>rejeo</b>                                 |
| lemon, citrus           | 레몬               | <b>remon</b>                                 |
| lend, to                | 빌려주다             | <b>billyeo juda</b>                          |
| less (smaller amount)   | 더 적다/적은          | <b>deo jeokda/jeogeun</b>                    |
| lesson                  | 수업, 강습           | <b>su eop, gangseup</b>                      |
| letter                  | 편지               | <b>pyeonji</b>                               |
| library                 | 도서관              | <b>doseogwan</b>                             |
| license (for driving)   | 면허증              | <b>myeonheojeung</b>                         |
| lie (falsehood)         | 거짓말              | <b>geojinmal</b>                             |
| lie down, to            | 눕다               | <b>nupda</b>                                 |
| lift (elevator)         | 엘리베이터            | <b>elli beiteo</b>                           |
| lift (in car), to give  | 대워주다             | <b>taewo juda</b>                            |
| light (lamp)            | 불                | <b>bul</b>                                   |
| light (not dark)        | 밝다/연하다,<br>밝은/연한 | <b>baltta/yeon hada,<br/>balgeun/yeonhan</b> |
| light (not heavy)       | 가볍다, 가벼운         | <b>gabyeopda, gabyeoun</b>                   |
| lightning               | 번개               | <b>beongae</b>                               |
| like, be pleased by, to | 좋아하다             | <b>joa hada</b>                              |

|                            |          |                          |
|----------------------------|----------|--------------------------|
| line (mark)                | 선        | <b>seon</b>              |
| line (queue)               | 줄        | <b>jul</b>               |
| liquor, alcohol            | 술        | <b>sul</b>               |
| listen, to                 | 듣다       | <b>deutda</b>            |
| literature                 | 문학       | <b>munhak</b>            |
| liter                      | 리터       | <b>riteo</b>             |
| little (amount)            | 적다, 적은   | <b>jeokda, jeogeun</b>   |
| little (small)             | 작다, 작은   | <b>jakda, jageun</b>     |
| live (be alive)            | 살아있는     | <b>sara inneun</b>       |
| live, to                   | 살다       | <b>salda</b>             |
| local                      | 지역       | <b>jiyeok</b>            |
| lock                       | 자물쇠      | <b>jamulsoe</b>          |
| long (length)              | 길다, 긴    | <b>gilda, gin</b>        |
| look at, see, to           | 보다       | <b>boda</b>              |
| look for, to               | 찾다       | <b>chatda</b>            |
| look up (find in book), to | 찾아보다     | <b>chaja boda</b>        |
| lose, misplace, to         | 잃어버리다    | <b>ireo beorida</b>      |
| loss (profit)              | 손실       | <b>sonsil</b>            |
| lost (can't find way)      | 길을 잃다/잃은 | <b>gireul ilta/ireun</b> |
| lost (missing)             | 잃어버린     | <b>ireo beorin</b>       |
| lost and found office      | 분실물 센터   | <b>bunsilmul senteo</b>  |
| loud                       | 소리가 크다/큰 | <b>soriga keuda/keun</b> |
| love                       | 사랑       | <b>sarang</b>            |
| love, to                   | 사랑하다     | <b>sarang hada</b>       |
| low                        | 낮다, 낮은   | <b>natda, najeun</b>     |
| luck                       | 운        | <b>un</b>                |
| luggage                    | 여행가방     | <b>yeohaeng gabang</b>   |
| lunch                      | 점심 식사    | <b>jeomsim siksa</b>     |

## M

|                         |        |                         |
|-------------------------|--------|-------------------------|
| madam (term of address) | 부인     | <b>buin</b>             |
| magazine                | 잡지     | <b>japji</b>            |
| mail, post              | 우편물    | <b>upyeonmul</b>        |
| mail, to                | 부치다    | <b>buchida</b>          |
| make an appointment     | 약속하다   | <b>yaksok hada</b>      |
| make, create, to        | 만들다    | <b>mandeulda</b>        |
| male                    | 남성     | <b>namseong</b>         |
| man                     | 남자     | <b>namja</b>            |
| manager                 | 관리 책임자 | <b>gwalli chaegimja</b> |
| many, much              | 많다, 많은 | <b>manta, maneun</b>    |
| map                     | 지도     | <b>jido</b>             |



|                          |                 |                                    |
|--------------------------|-----------------|------------------------------------|
| March                    | 삼월              | <b>Samwol</b>                      |
| marital status           | 결혼 여부           | <b>gyeolhon yeobu</b>              |
| market                   | 시장              | <b>sijang</b>                      |
| married                  | 결혼하다, 결혼한       | <b>gyeolhon hada, gyeolhon han</b> |
| match, game              | 시합              | <b>sihap</b>                       |
| matches                  | 성냥              | <b>seongnyang</b>                  |
| may                      | -아/어도 좋다        | <b>-a/eodo jota</b>                |
| May                      | 오월              | <b>Owol</b>                        |
| maybe                    | 아마              | <b>ama</b>                         |
| meal                     | 식사              | <b>siksa</b>                       |
| mean (word), to          | 의미하다            | <b>uimi hada</b>                   |
| meaning                  | 의미              | <b>uimi</b>                        |
| measure out, to          | 재다              | <b>jaeda</b>                       |
| meat                     | 고기              | <b>gogi</b>                        |
| medicine                 | 약               | <b>yak</b>                         |
| meet, to                 | 만나다             | <b>mannada</b>                     |
| member                   | 회원              | <b>hoewon</b>                      |
| membership card          | 회원권             | <b>hoewon kkwon</b>                |
| memory card              | 메모리 카드          | <b>memori kadeu, memory card</b>   |
| mend, to                 | 고치다             | <b>gochida</b>                     |
| menu                     | 메뉴              | <b>menyu</b>                       |
| message                  | 메시지             | <b>messiji</b>                     |
| metal                    | 금속              | <b>geumsok</b>                     |
| meter                    | 미터              | <b>miteo</b>                       |
| meter (in taxi)          | 미터기             | <b>miteogi</b>                     |
| migraine                 | 편두통             | <b>pyeon dutong</b>                |
| mild (taste)             | 순하다, 순한         | <b>sunhada, sunhan</b>             |
| milk                     | 우유              | <b>uyu</b>                         |
| millimeter               | 밀리미터            | <b>milli miteo</b>                 |
| mind, be displeased, to  | 신경 쓰이다          | <b>singyeong sseu ida</b>          |
| mine                     | 내 것, 제 것        | <b>nae geot, je geot</b>           |
| mineral water            | 광천수             | <b>gwangcheonsu</b>                |
| minute                   | 분               | <b>bun</b>                         |
| mirror                   | 거울              | <b>geoul</b>                       |
| miss (flight, train), to | 놓치다             | <b>nochida</b>                     |
| miss (loved one), to     | 보고싶다,<br>보고싶어하다 | <b>bogo sipda, bogo sipeo hada</b> |
| missing                  | 없어지다, 없어진       | <b>eopseo jida, eopseo jin</b>     |
| mistake                  | 실수              | <b>silsu</b>                       |

|                    |          |                                       |
|--------------------|----------|---------------------------------------|
| misunderstanding   | 오해       | ohae                                  |
| mobile phone       | 휴대전화     | hyudae jeonhwa                        |
| modern art         | 현대 미술    | hyeondae misul                        |
| moment (instant)   | 순간       | sungan                                |
| Monday             | 월요일      | Woryo il                              |
| money              | 돈        | don                                   |
| month              | 달        | dal                                   |
| moon               | 달        | dal                                   |
| more (comparative) | 더        | deo                                   |
| morning            | 아침       | achim                                 |
| most (superlative) | 가장       | gajang                                |
| motel              | 모텔       | motel                                 |
| mother             | 어머니      | ecomeoni                              |
| mountain           | 산        | san                                   |
| moustache          | 콧수염      | kossu yeom                            |
| mouth              | 입        | ip                                    |
| movie              | 영화       | yeonghwa                              |
| MP3 player         | mp3 플레이어 | Empi sseuri peullei eo/<br>mp3 player |
| much, many         | 많다, 많은   | manta, maneun                         |
| mud                | 진흙       | jinheuk                               |
| muscle             | 근육       | geunyuk                               |
| museum             | 박물관      | bangmulgwan                           |
| music              | 음악       | eumak                                 |
| must               | -아/어야 하다 | -a/eoya hada                          |
| my                 | 내, 제     | nae, je                               |

## N

|                    |           |                         |
|--------------------|-----------|-------------------------|
| nail (finger, toe) | 손톱, 발톱    | sontop, baltop          |
| nail (spike)       | 못         | mot                     |
| naked              | 벌거벗다/-벗은  | beolgeo beotda/-beoseun |
| name               | 이름        | ireum                   |
| nationality        | 국적        | gukjeok                 |
| natural            | 자연(적인)    | jayeon (jeogin)         |
| nature             | 자연        | jayeon                  |
| near               | 가까이       | gakkai                  |
| nearby             | 가까이에      | gakka ie                |
| necessary          | 필요하다, 필요한 | piryo hada, piryo han   |
| neck               | 목         | mok                     |
| necktie            | 넥타이       | nektai                  |

|                          |                      |                                                |
|--------------------------|----------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| need, to                 | 필요하다                 | <b>piryo hada</b>                              |
| needle                   | 바늘                   | <b>baneul</b>                                  |
| neighbor                 | 이웃(사람)               | <b>iut (saram)</b>                             |
| nephew                   | 조카                   | <b>joka</b>                                    |
| never                    | 결코...아니다/-지 않다       | <b>gyeolko ...anida/-ji anta</b>               |
| new                      | 새롭다, 새(로운)           | <b>saeropda, sae(roun)</b>                     |
| news                     | 뉴스                   | <b>nyuseu</b>                                  |
| news stand               | 신문 가판대               | <b>sinmun gapandae</b>                         |
| newspaper                | 신문                   | <b>sinmun</b>                                  |
| next (in line, sequence) | 다음(의)                | <b>daeum(ui)</b>                               |
| next to                  | ...옆에                | <b>...yeope</b>                                |
| nice                     | 멋지다, 멋진              | <b>meotjida, meotjin</b>                       |
| nice (pleasant)          | 기분 좋다, 기분 좋은         | <b>gibun jota, gibun joeun</b>                 |
| niece                    | 조카딸                  | <b>jokattal</b>                                |
| night                    | 밤                    | <b>bam</b>                                     |
| no (answer)              | 아뇨                   | <b>anyo</b>                                    |
| no entry                 | 진입금지                 | <b>jinip geumji</b>                            |
| no thank you             | 괜찮아요                 | <b>gwaencha nayo</b>                           |
| no one                   | 아무도 ...아니다/<br>-지 않다 | <b>amudo ...anida/-ji anta</b>                 |
| noise                    | 소음                   | <b>so eum</b>                                  |
| nonstop (flight)         | 직항                   | <b>jikang</b>                                  |
| noodles                  | 국수                   | <b>guksu</b>                                   |
| normal                   | 정상적이다/-적인            | <b>jeongsang jeogida,<br/>jeongsang jeogin</b> |
| north                    | 북쪽                   | <b>bukjjok</b>                                 |
| nose                     | 코                    | <b>ko</b>                                      |
| notebook                 | 노트, 공책               | <b>noteu, gongchaek</b>                        |
| notebook computer        | 노트북 (컴퓨터)            | <b>noteu buk (computer)</b>                    |
| nothing                  | 아무것도 ...아니다          | <b>amu geotdo ...anida</b>                     |
| November                 | 십일월                  | <b>Sibilwol</b>                                |
| now                      | 지금                   | <b>jigeum</b>                                  |
| nowhere                  | 어디에도 ...없다           | <b>eodi edo ...eopda</b>                       |
| number                   | 숫자, 번호               | <b>sutja, beonho</b>                           |
| nurse                    | 간호사                  | <b>ganhosa</b>                                 |

## O

|            |      |               |
|------------|------|---------------|
| o'clock    | ...시 | <b>...si</b>  |
| occupation | 직업   | <b>jigeop</b> |

October  
offer, suggest, to  
office  
often  
oil  
okay  
old (of persons)  
on (turned on)  
on board  
on foot  
on the left  
on the right  
on the way  
one-way ticket  
one-way traffic  
open  
open, to  
operate (surgeon), to  
opposite (contrary)  
optician

시월  
제의하다  
사무실  
자주  
기름  
좋다, 괜찮다  
나이 많다/많은  
켜져 있다  
타고 있다  
걸어서  
왼쪽에  
오른쪽에  
오는/가는 길에  
편도표  
일방통행  
열리다, 열린  
열다  
수술하다  
반대(의)  
안경사, 안경점

**Siwol**  
**jeui hada**  
**samusil**  
**jaju**  
**gireum**  
**jota, gwaenchanta**  
**nai manta/maneun**  
**kyeojyeo itda**  
**tago itda**  
**georeoseo**  
**oenjjoge**  
**oreun jjoge**  
**oneun/ganeun gire**  
**pyeondopyo**  
**ilbang tonghaeng**  
**yeollida, yeollin**  
**yeolda**  
**susul hada**  
**bandae (ui)**  
**angyeongsa,**  
**angyeongjeom**

or  
orange (color)  
order (command)  
order something, to  
other  
other side  
our  
outside  
over there  
overcome, to  
overpass, flyover  
overseas  
overtake, to

또는  
오렌지색  
주문  
주문하다  
다른  
다른 쪽  
우리(의)  
바깥(쪽)  
저기(로)  
이겨내다  
고가도로  
해외(의)  
추월하다

**ttoneun**  
**orenji saek**  
**jumun**  
**jumun hada**  
**dareun**  
**dareun jjok**  
**uri(ui)**  
**bakkat(jjok)**  
**jeogi(ro)**  
**igyeo naeda**  
**goga doro**  
**hae oe(ui)**  
**chuwol hada**

## P

page  
pain  
painful  
painkiller

페이지  
통증  
아프다, 아픈  
진통제

**peiji**  
**tongjeung**  
**apeuda, apeun**  
**jintongje**

|                       |             |                                    |
|-----------------------|-------------|------------------------------------|
| paint                 | 페인트         | <b>peinteu</b>                     |
| pajamas               | 파자마         | <b>pajama</b>                      |
| pan                   | 냄비          | <b>naembi</b>                      |
| paper                 | 종이          | <b>jongi</b>                       |
| parcel                | 소포          | <b>sopo</b>                        |
| Pardon me?            | 뭐라고 하셨어요?   | <b>Mworago hasyeo sseoyo?</b>      |
| parents               | 부모          | <b>bumo</b>                        |
| park (car), to        | 주차하다        | <b>jucha hada</b>                  |
| park, gardens         | 공원          | <b>gongwon</b>                     |
| part (of machine)     | 부속          | <b>busok</b>                       |
| partner (in business) | 동업자         | <b>donggeopja</b>                  |
| party (event)         | 파티          | <b>pati</b>                        |
| passenger             | 승객          | <b>seunggaek</b>                   |
| passport              | 여권          | <b>yeokkwon</b>                    |
| password              | 비밀번호, 암호    | <b>bimil beonho/amho</b>           |
| patient (calm)        | 인내심 있다/-있는  | <b>innae simitda/-inneun</b>       |
| patient (doctor's)    | 환자          | <b>hwanja</b>                      |
| pay (bill), to        | 지불하다        | <b>jibul hada</b>                  |
| peas                  | 완두콩         | <b>wandukong</b>                   |
| pedal                 | 페달          | <b>pedal</b>                       |
| pedestrian crossing   | 건널목         | <b>geonneolmok</b>                 |
| pen                   | 펜           | <b>pen</b>                         |
| pencil                | 연필          | <b>yeonpil</b>                     |
| people                | 사람들         | <b>saramdeul</b>                   |
| performance           | 공연          | <b>gongyeon</b>                    |
| perfume               | 향수          | <b>hyangsu</b>                     |
| perhaps, maybe        | 아마          | <b>ama</b>                         |
| period (menstrual)    | 생리          | <b>saengri</b>                     |
| permit, allow, to     | 허락하다        | <b>heorak hada</b>                 |
| person                | 사람          | <b>saram</b>                       |
| personal              | 개인적이다, 개인적인 | <b>gaein jeogida, gaein jeogin</b> |
| pharmacy, drugstore   | 약국          | <b>yak guk</b>                     |
| phone                 | 전화          | <b>jeonhwa</b>                     |
| phone, to             | 전화하다        | <b>jeonhwa hada</b>                |
| phone booth           | 전화 박스       | <b>jeonhwa bakseu</b>              |
| phone card            | 전화 카드       | <b>jeonhwa kadeu</b>               |
| photo (digital)       | (디지털) 사진    | <b>(dijiteol) sajin</b>            |
| photograph            | 사진          | <b>sajin</b>                       |
| phrasebook            | 숙어집         | <b>sugeojip</b>                    |
| pick up (someone), to | 태워주다        | <b>taewo juda</b>                  |
| pillow                | 베개          | <b>begae</b>                       |

|                      |            |                           |
|----------------------|------------|---------------------------|
| pills, tablets       | 알약         | allyak                    |
| place of interest    | 관광 명소      | gwangwang myeongso        |
| plain (not flavored) | 담백하다/-한    | dambaek hada, dambae kan  |
| plain (simple)       | 단순하다, 단순한  | dansun hada, dansun han   |
| plan                 | 계획         | gyehoek                   |
| plane                | 비행기        | bihaenggi                 |
| plastic bag          | 비닐 봉지      | binil bongji              |
| platform             | 플랫폼        | peullaet pom              |
| play (drama)         | 연극         | yeonggeuk                 |
| play (fun), to       | 놀다         | nolda                     |
| play golf            | 골프 치다      | golpeu chida              |
| play sports          | 운동 경기하다    | undong gyeonggi hada      |
| play tennis          | 테니스 치다     | teniseu chida             |
| playground           | 운동장        | undongjang                |
| pleasant             | 기분 좋다/좋은   | gibun jota/joeun          |
| please (request)     | 좀 -어/아 주세요 | jom -eo/a juseyo          |
| pleasure             | 기쁨         | gippeum                   |
| pocket               | 호주머니       | ho jumeoni                |
| point out, to        | 지적하다       | jijeok hada               |
| poison               | 독(약)       | dok(yak)                  |
| police               | 경찰         | gyeongchal                |
| police officer       | 경찰관        | gyeongchal gwan           |
| police station       | 경찰서        | gyeongchalseo             |
| pop music            | 대중음악       | daejung eumak             |
| population           | 인구         | ingu                      |
| pork                 | 돼지고기       | dwaeji gogi               |
| port                 | 항구         | hanggu                    |
| possible             | 가능하다, 가능한  | ganeung hada, ganeung han |
| post office          | 우체국        | ucheguk                   |
| postage stamp        | 우표         | upyo                      |
| postcard             | 엽서         | yeopseo                   |
| post code            | 우편 번호      | upyeon beonho             |
| postpone, to         | 연기하다       | yeonggi hada              |
| potato chips         | 감자 튀김      | gamja twigim              |
| power outlet         | 콘센트        | konsenteu                 |
| prefer, to           | 선호하다       | seonho hada               |
| preference           | 선호         | seonho                    |
| pregnant             | 임신하다, 임신한  | imsin hada, imsin han     |
| prescription         | 처방(전)      | cheo bang (jeon)          |
| present (gift)       | 선물         | seonmul                   |

|                   |           |                                    |
|-------------------|-----------|------------------------------------|
| present (here)    | 출석하다, 출석한 | <b>chulseok hada, chulseok kan</b> |
| price             | 가격        | <b>gagyeok</b>                     |
| price list        | 가격표       | <b>gagyeok pyo</b>                 |
| print (photo)     | 인화        | <b>inhwa</b>                       |
| print, to         | 인화하다      | <b>inhwa hada</b>                  |
| probably          | 아마        | <b>ama</b>                         |
| problem           | 문제        | <b>munje</b>                       |
| profession        | 직업        | <b>jigeop</b>                      |
| profit            | 이익        | <b>i ik</b>                        |
| program, schedule | 프로그램      | <b>peuro geuraem</b>               |
| pronounce, to     | 발음하다      | <b>bareum hada</b>                 |
| pull a muscle     | 근육 이완     | <b>geunyuk iwan</b>                |
| pull, to          | 당기다       | <b>danggida</b>                    |
| pulse             | 맥박        | <b>maekbak</b>                     |
| purple            | 자주색       | <b>jajusaek</b>                    |
| purse (for money) | 지갑        | <b>jigap</b>                       |
| push, to          | 밀다        | <b>milda</b>                       |
| pyjamas           | 파자마       | <b>pajama</b>                      |

## Q

|                    |           |                               |
|--------------------|-----------|-------------------------------|
| quarter            | 4 분의 1    | <b>sa bunui il</b>            |
| quarter of an hour | 십오분       | <b>sipobun</b>                |
| queen              | 여왕        | <b>yeowang</b>                |
| question           | 질문, 문제    | <b>jilmun, munje</b>          |
| quick              | 빠르다, 빠른   | <b>ppareuda, ppareun</b>      |
| quiet              | 조용하다, 조용한 | <b>joyong hada, joyonghan</b> |

## R

|                                            |        |                     |
|--------------------------------------------|--------|---------------------|
| radio                                      | 라디오    | <b>radio</b>        |
| railroad, railway                          | 철도     | <b>cheoltto</b>     |
| rain                                       | 비      | <b>bi</b>           |
| rain, to                                   | 비가 오다  | <b>biga oda</b>     |
| rash                                       | 발진     | <b>baljin</b>       |
| rate of exchange<br>(for foreign currency) | 환율     | <b>hwannyul</b>     |
| rate, tariff                               | 요금     | <b>yogeum</b>       |
| raw, uncooked                              | 날 (것의) | <b>nal (geosui)</b> |

|                                  |               |                                      |
|----------------------------------|---------------|--------------------------------------|
| read, to                         | 읽다            | <b>ilktta</b>                        |
| really (in fact)                 | 실제로           | <b>siljero</b>                       |
| Really?                          | 정말요?          | <b>Jeongmaryo?</b>                   |
| reason                           | 이유            | <b>iyu</b>                           |
| receive, to                      | 받다            | <b>batda</b>                         |
| reception desk                   | 안내            | <b>annae</b>                         |
| recipe                           | 조리법           | <b>jori beop</b>                     |
| recommend, to                    | 추천하다          | <b>chucheon hada</b>                 |
| red                              | 빨갳다, 빨간       | <b>ppalgata, ppalgan</b>             |
| reduction                        | 축소            | <b>chukso</b>                        |
| refund                           | 환불            | <b>hwanbul</b>                       |
| region                           | 지역, 지방        | <b>jiyeok, jibang</b>                |
| relatives, family                | 친척            | <b>chincheok</b>                     |
| reliable                         | 믿을 만하다, 믿을 만한 | <b>mideulman hada, mideulman han</b> |
| religion                         | 종교            | <b>jonggyo</b>                       |
| remains (historical)             | 유물            | <b>yumul</b>                         |
| rent out, to                     | 세주다           | <b>sejuda</b>                        |
| rent, to                         | 임대하다          | <b>imdae hada</b>                    |
| repair, to                       | 고치다           | <b>gochida</b>                       |
| repeat, to                       | 반복하다          | <b>banbok hada</b>                   |
| report (police)                  | 보고서           | <b>bogoseo</b>                       |
| reservation                      | 예약            | <b>yeyak</b>                         |
| reserve (ask for in advance), to | 예약하다          | <b>yeyak hada</b>                    |
| responsible, to be               | 책임 있다/있는      | <b>chaegim itda/inneun</b>           |
| rest, relax, to                  | 쉬다            | <b>swida</b>                         |
| restaurant                       | 식당            | <b>sikdang</b>                       |
| restroom                         | 화장실           | <b>hwajangsil</b>                    |
| return ticket                    | 왕복표           | <b>wangbokpyo</b>                    |
| rheumatism                       | 류머티즘          | <b>ryumeo tijeum</b>                 |
| rice (cooked)                    | 밥             | <b>bap</b>                           |
| ride, to                         | 타다            | <b>tada</b>                          |
| right away                       | 지금 당장         | <b>jigeum dangjang</b>               |
| right, correct                   | 옳다, 옳은        | <b>olta, oreun</b>                   |
| right-hand side                  | 오른쪽           | <b>oreun jjok</b>                    |
| rinse                            | 헹굼            | <b>henggum</b>                       |
| ripen, to                        | 익다, 익은        | <b>ikda, igeun</b>                   |
| risk                             | 위험            | <b>wiheom</b>                        |
| river                            | 강             | <b>gang</b>                          |
| road                             | 도로            | <b>doro</b>                          |
| roadway                          | 차도            | <b>chado</b>                         |
| roasted, grilled, toasted        | 구운            | <b>gu un</b>                         |



roof  
room  
room number  
room service  
route  
rubber  
rude  
ruins  
run, to

지붕  
방, 룸  
룸 넘버  
룸 서비스  
루트  
고무  
무례하다, 무례한  
유적  
달리다

**jibung**  
**bang, rum**  
**rum neombeo**  
**rum seobiseu**  
**ruteu**  
**gomu**  
**murye hada, murye han**  
**yujeok**  
**dallida**

## S

sad  
safe  
safe (for cash)  
sail, to  
salad  
sale (reduced prices)  
sales clerk  
salty  
sandals  
satisfied  
Saturday  
sauce  
sauna  
save, keep, to  
say, to  
scald (injury)  
scales  
scan, to  
scarf  
school  
Scotland  
scuba diving  
sculpture  
sea  
seafood  
seasick  
seat  
second (in line)  
second (instant), in a

슬프다, 슬픈  
안전하다, 안전한  
금고  
항해하다  
샐러드  
세일  
점원  
짜다, 짠  
샌달  
만족하다  
토요일  
소스, 양념  
사우나  
보관하다  
말하다  
물화상  
저울  
스캔하다  
스카프  
학교  
스코틀랜드  
스쿠버 다이빙  
조각  
바다  
해물  
배멀미  
자리  
두 번째  
금방

**seulpeuda, seulpeun**  
**anjeon hada, anjeon han**  
**geumgo**  
**hanghae hada**  
**salleodeu**  
**seil**  
**jeomwon**  
**jjada, jjan**  
**saendal**  
**manjok hada**  
**Toyo il**  
**soseu, yangnyeom**  
**sa una**  
**bogwan hada**  
**mal hada**  
**mul hwasang**  
**jeo ul**  
**seukaen hada/scan hada**  
**seukapeu**  
**hakgyo**  
**Seukoteul laendeu**  
**seukubeo daibing**  
**jogak**  
**bada**  
**haemul**  
**baemeolmi**  
**jari**  
**du beonjjae**  
**geumbang**

|                         |           |                                |
|-------------------------|-----------|--------------------------------|
| second-hand             | 중고        | <b>junggo</b>                  |
| sedative                | 진정제       | <b>jinjeongje</b>              |
| see, to                 | 보다        | <b>boda</b>                    |
| send, to                | 보내다       | <b>bonaeda</b>                 |
| sentence                | 문장        | <b>munjang</b>                 |
| separate                | 각각(의)     | <b>gakgak(ui)</b>              |
| September               | 구월        | <b>Guwol</b>                   |
| serious                 | 심각하다, 심각한 | <b>simgak hada, simgak han</b> |
| service                 | 서비스       | <b>seobiseu</b>                |
| service station         | 주유소       | <b>juyuso</b>                  |
| set                     | 세트        | <b>seteu</b>                   |
| sew, to                 | 바느질하다     | <b>baneu jilhada</b>           |
| shame, disgrace         | 수치        | <b>suchi</b>                   |
| shampoo                 | 샴푸        | <b>syampu</b>                  |
| shave, to               | 면도하다      | <b>myeondo hada</b>            |
| she                     | 그 여자      | <b>geu yeoja</b>               |
| sheet (for bed)         | 시트        | <b>siteu</b>                   |
| shirt                   | 셔츠        | <b>syechoeu</b>                |
| shoe polish             | 구두약       | <b>guduyak</b>                 |
| shoes                   | 신발        | <b>sinbal</b>                  |
| shop assistant          | 점원        | <b>jeomwon</b>                 |
| shop window             | 쇼 윈도우     | <b>syo windou</b>              |
| shop, go shopping, to   | 쇼핑하다      | <b>syoping hada</b>            |
| shop, store             | 가게        | <b>gage</b>                    |
| shopping center         | 쇼핑 센터     | <b>syoping senteo</b>          |
| short (not tall)        | 작다, 작은    | <b>jakda, jageun</b>           |
| short circuit           | 합선        | <b>hapseon</b>                 |
| shorts (short trousers) | 반바지       | <b>banbaji</b>                 |
| shorts (underpants)     | 팬티        | <b>paenti</b>                  |
| shoulder                | 어깨        | <b>eokkae</b>                  |
| show (live performance) | 쇼         | <b>syo</b>                     |
| show, to                | 보여주다      | <b>boyeo juda</b>              |
| shower, to take a       | 샤워하다      | <b>syawo hada</b>              |
| sick, ill               | 아프다, 아픈   | <b>apeuda, apeun</b>           |
| sightseeing             | 시내 관광     | <b>sinae gwangwang</b>         |
| sign (road)             | 도로 표지     | <b>doro pyoji</b>              |
| sign, symbol            | 표시        | <b>pyosi</b>                   |
| sign, to                | 서명하다      | <b>seomyeong hada</b>          |
| signature               | 서명, 사인    | <b>seomyeong, ssa in</b>       |
| silent                  | 고요하다, 고요한 | <b>goyo hada, goyohan</b>      |
| similar                 | 비슷하다, 비슷한 | <b>biseut hada, biseu tan</b>  |
| simple (easy)           | 쉽다, 쉬운    | <b>swip da, swi un</b>         |
| simple (uncomplicated)  | 간단하다/-한   | <b>gandan hada, gandan han</b> |

|                                                    |            |                                             |
|----------------------------------------------------|------------|---------------------------------------------|
| sing, to                                           | 노래하다       | <b>norae hada</b>                           |
| single (only one)                                  | 단 하나(의)    | <b>dan hana(ui)</b>                         |
| single (unmarried)                                 | 독신(의)      | <b>doksin (ui)</b>                          |
| single ticket                                      | 편도표        | <b>pyeondopyo</b>                           |
| sir (term of address)                              | ...님       | <b>...nim</b>                               |
| sister                                             | 자매         | <b>jamae</b>                                |
| sit down, to                                       | 앉다         | <b>anda</b>                                 |
| size                                               | 사이즈        | <b>saijeu</b>                               |
| skiing                                             | 스키         | <b>seuki</b>                                |
| skin                                               | 피부         | <b>pibu</b>                                 |
| skirt                                              | 치마         | <b>chima</b>                                |
| Skype address                                      | 스카이프 주소    | <b>seukai peu juso/Skype<br/>juso</b>       |
| sleep, to                                          | 자다         | <b>jada</b>                                 |
| sleeve                                             | 소매         | <b>somae</b>                                |
| slippers                                           | 슬리퍼        | <b>seullipeo</b>                            |
| slow                                               | 느리다, 느린    | <b>neurida, neurin</b>                      |
| small                                              | 작다, 작은     | <b>jakda, jageun</b>                        |
| small change                                       | 잔돈         | <b>jandon</b>                               |
| smartphone                                         | 스마트폰       | <b>seuma teupon/smart<br/>phone</b>         |
| smell, bad odor                                    | 냄새         | <b>naemsae</b>                              |
| smoke                                              | 연기         | <b>yeongi</b>                               |
| smoke (tobacco), to                                | 담배 피다      | <b>dambae pida</b>                          |
| smoke detector                                     | 연기 경보기     | <b>yeongi gyeongbogi</b>                    |
| sneeze, to                                         | 재채기하다      | <b>jaechaegi hada</b>                       |
| snore, to                                          | 코 골다       | <b>ko golda</b>                             |
| snorkel                                            | 스노클링       | <b>seuno keulling</b>                       |
| snow                                               | 눈          | <b>nun</b>                                  |
| snow, to                                           | 눈이 오다      | <b>nuni oda</b>                             |
| soap                                               | 비누         | <b>binu</b>                                 |
| soccer                                             | 축구         | <b>chukgu</b>                               |
| socket (electric)                                  | 소켓         | <b>soketeu</b>                              |
| social media (Social<br>Networking Service or SNS) | 소셜 미디어/SNS | <b>sosyeol midi eo/social<br/>media/SNS</b> |
| soft drink                                         | 음료수        | <b>eumnyosu</b>                             |
| software                                           | 소프트웨어      | <b>sopeuteu we eo/software</b>              |
| sold out                                           | 매진         | <b>maejin</b>                               |
| sole (of shoe)                                     | 밑창         | <b>mitchang</b>                             |
| somebody, someone                                  | 어떤 사람      | <b>otteon saram</b>                         |
| something                                          | 어떤 것       | <b>otteon geot</b>                          |
| sometimes                                          | 가끔         | <b>gakkeum</b>                              |

|                      |         |                         |
|----------------------|---------|-------------------------|
| somewhere            | 어딘가     | <b>eodinga</b>          |
| son                  | 아들      | <b>adeul</b>            |
| soon                 | 곧       | <b>got</b>              |
| sore throat          | 인후통     | <b>inhutong</b>         |
| sore, painful        | 아프다, 아픈 | <b>apeuda, apeun</b>    |
| Sorry!               | 미안합니다!  | <b>Mian hamnida!</b>    |
| sour                 | 시다, 신   | <b>sida, sin</b>        |
| south                | 남쪽      | <b>namjjok</b>          |
| souvenir             | 기념품     | <b>ginyeom pum</b>      |
| spare                | 스페어     | <b>seuppe eo</b>        |
| speak, to            | 말하다     | <b>mal hada</b>         |
| specialist (doctor)  | 전문의     | <b>jeon munui</b>       |
| speciality (cooking) | 특선 요리   | <b>teukseon yori</b>    |
| speed                | 속도      | <b>sokdo</b>            |
| speed limit          | 제한 속도   | <b>jehan sokdo</b>      |
| spell, to            | 철자하다    | <b>cheolja hada</b>     |
| spicy                | 맵다, 매운  | <b>maepda, mae un</b>   |
| splinter             | 파편      | <b>papyeon</b>          |
| sports               | 스포츠     | <b>seupocheu</b>        |
| sports center        | 스포츠 센터  | <b>seupocheu senteo</b> |
| spot (place)         | 지점      | <b>jijeom</b>           |
| spot (stain)         | 점       | <b>jeom</b>             |
| spouse               | 배우자     | <b>bae uja</b>          |
| sprain               | 뺨       | <b>ppim</b>             |
| spring (device)      | 용수철     | <b>yongsucheol</b>      |
| spring (season)      | 봄       | <b>bom</b>              |
| square (plaza)       | 광장      | <b>gwangjang</b>        |
| square meter         | 제곱 미터   | <b>jegop miteo</b>      |
| squash (game)        | 스쿼시     | <b>seukwosi</b>         |
| stadium              | 스타디움    | <b>seuta dium</b>       |
| staff                | 직원      | <b>jigwon</b>           |
| stairs               | 계단      | <b>gyedan</b>           |
| stamp (postage)      | 우표      | <b>upyoo</b>            |
| stand up, to         | 일어서다    | <b>ireo seoda</b>       |
| star                 | 별       | <b>byeol</b>            |
| start, beginning     | 시작      | <b>sijak</b>            |
| start, to            | 시작하다    | <b>sijak hada</b>       |
| station              | 역       | <b>yeok</b>             |
| statue               | 동상      | <b>dong sang</b>        |
| stay overnight, to   | 묵다      | <b>mukda</b>            |
| stay, remain, to     | 머무르다    | <b>meomu reuda</b>      |
| steal, to            | 훔치다     | <b>humchida</b>         |

|                        |           |                                  |
|------------------------|-----------|----------------------------------|
| steamed                | 찌다, 찌     | <b>jjida, jjin</b>               |
| steel                  | 강철        | <b>gangcheol</b>                 |
| stepfather             | 계부        | <b>gyebu</b>                     |
| stepmother             | 계모        | <b>gyemo</b>                     |
| steps, stairs          | 계단        | <b>gyedan</b>                    |
| sticky tape            | 테이프       | <b>tepeu</b>                     |
| stitch (in wound), to  | 봉합하다      | <b>bonghap hada</b>              |
| stomach (abdomen)      | 배         | <b>bae</b>                       |
| stomach (organ)        | 위         | <b>wi</b>                        |
| stomach ache           | 복통        | <b>boktong</b>                   |
| stomach cramps         | 위 경련      | <b>wi gyeongnyeon</b>            |
| stop (bus)             | 정류장       | <b>jeongnyujang</b>              |
| stop, cease            | 그만두다      | <b>geuman duda</b>               |
| stop, halt, to         | 멈추다       | <b>meomchuda</b>                 |
| stopover               | 도중 하차     | <b>dojung hacha</b>              |
| store, shop            | 가게        | <b>gage</b>                      |
| storey (of a building) | ...층 짜리   | <b>...cheung jjari</b>           |
| storm (weather)        | 폭풍        | <b>pokpung</b>                   |
| straight               | 똑바르다, 똑바른 | <b>ttokba reuda, ttokba reun</b> |
| straight ahead         | 똑바로       | <b>ttokbaro</b>                  |
| street                 | 거리        | <b>geori</b>                     |
| strike (work stoppage) | 파업        | <b>pa eop</b>                    |
| string                 | 끈         | <b>kkeun</b>                     |
| strong                 | 힘세다, 힘센   | <b>himseda, himsen</b>           |
| student                | 학생        | <b>haksaeng</b>                  |
| study (learn), to      | 공부하다      | <b>gongbu hada</b>               |
| subtitles              | 자막        | <b>jamak</b>                     |
| succeed, to            | 성공하다      | <b>seonggong hada</b>            |
| sugar                  | 설탕        | <b>seoltang</b>                  |
| suit, business         | 정장        | <b>jeongjang</b>                 |
| summer                 | 여름        | <b>yeoreum</b>                   |
| sunbathe               | 일광욕       | <b>ilgwangyok</b>                |
| Sunday                 | 일요일       | <b>Iryo il</b>                   |
| sunglasses             | 선글라스      | <b>seongeullas</b>               |
| sunny                  | 화창하다/-한   | <b>hwachang hada/-han</b>        |
| sunstroke              | 일사병       | <b>ilsa byeong</b>               |
| supermarket            | 수퍼마켓      | <b>supeo maket</b>               |
| surcharge              | 추가 요금     | <b>chuga yogeum</b>              |
| surf                   | 파도        | <b>pado</b>                      |
| surface mail           | 선편        | <b>seonpyeon</b>                 |
| surfboard              | 서핑 보드     | <b>seoping bodeu</b>             |
| surname                | 성         | <b>seong</b>                     |

surprised  
swallow, to  
sweat  
sweat, to  
sweet  
swim, to  
swimming costume, swimsuit  
  
swimming pool  
swindle  
switch

놀란  
삼키다  
땀  
땀 흘리다  
달다, 단  
수영하다  
수영복  
  
수영장  
사기  
스위치

nollan  
samkida  
ttam  
ttam heullida  
dalda, dan  
suyeong hada  
suyeong bok  
  
suyeong jang  
sagi  
seuwichi

## T

table  
table tennis  
tablets  
take (medicine), to  
take (photograph), to  
take (time), to  
take off (clothes), to  
talk, to  
tall  
tap water  
taste  
taste, to  
tasty, delicious  
tax  
tax-free shop  
taxi  
taxi stand  
tea  
tea (green)  
teeth  
telephoto lens  
television  
tell, to  
temperature (body)  
temperature (heat)  
temple  
tennis  
terrace

테이블  
탁구  
알약  
(약을) 먹다  
(사진을) 찍다  
(시간이) 걸리다  
벗다  
말하다  
키 크다/큰  
수돗물  
맛  
맛보다  
맛있다, 맛있는  
세금  
면세점  
택시  
택시 정류장  
차  
녹차  
이  
망원 렌즈  
텔레비전  
말하다  
체온  
온도  
절  
테니스  
테라스

teibeul  
takgu  
allyak  
(yageul) meokda  
(Sajineul) jjikda  
(sigani) geollida  
beotda  
malhada  
ki keuda/keun  
sudon mul  
mat  
mat boda  
masitda, masinneun  
segeum  
myeon sejeom  
taeksi  
taeksi jeongnyujang  
cha  
nokcha  
i  
mangwon lenjeu  
telle bijeon  
malhada  
cheon  
ondo  
jeol  
teniseu  
teraseu

|                            |           |                                           |
|----------------------------|-----------|-------------------------------------------|
| terminus                   | 종점        | <b>jongjeom</b>                           |
| test                       | 시험        | <b>siheom</b>                             |
| text message               | 문자 (메시지)  | <b>munja (mesiji)/munja<br/>(message)</b> |
| Thank you!, Thanks!        | 감사합니다!    | <b>Gamsa hamnida!</b>                     |
| thaw, to                   | 녹이다       | <b>nogida</b>                             |
| theater (drama)            | 극장        | <b>geukjang</b>                           |
| theft                      | 도난        | <b>donan</b>                              |
| there                      | 저기에, 거기에  | <b>jeogi e, geogi e</b>                   |
| thermometer (body)         | 체온계       | <b>cheongye</b>                           |
| thermometer (weather)      | 온도계       | <b>ondogye</b>                            |
| they                       | 그들        | <b>geudeul</b>                            |
| thick (of liquids)         | 진하다, 진한   | <b>jinhada, jinhan</b>                    |
| thick (of things)          | 두껍다, 두꺼운  | <b>dukkeopda, dukkeoun</b>                |
| thief                      | 도둑        | <b>doduk</b>                              |
| thigh                      | 허벅지       | <b>heobeokji</b>                          |
| thin (not fat)             | 마른        | <b>mareun</b>                             |
| thin (not thick)           | 얇은        | <b>mulgeun</b>                            |
| thing                      | 물건        | <b>mulgeon</b>                            |
| think, have an opinion, to | 생각하다      | <b>saenggak hada</b>                      |
| think, ponder, to          | 숙고하다      | <b>sukgo hada</b>                         |
| third                      | 세 번째      | <b>se beonjjae</b>                        |
| third, one third           | 삼분의 일     | <b>sambune il</b>                         |
| thirsty                    | 목마르다, 목마른 | <b>mongma reuda, mongma<br/>reun</b>      |
| this afternoon             | 오늘 오후     | <b>oneul ohu</b>                          |
| this evening               | 오늘 저녁     | <b>oneul jeonyeok</b>                     |
| this morning               | 오늘 아침     | <b>oneul achim</b>                        |
| throat                     | 목(구멍)     | <b>mok (gumeong)</b>                      |
| throat lozenges            | 기침 사탕     | <b>gichim satang</b>                      |
| thunderstorm               | 천둥 폭풍우    | <b>cheondung pokpungu</b>                 |
| Thursday                   | 목요일       | <b>Mogyo il</b>                           |
| ticket                     | 표         | <b>pyo</b>                                |
| ticket office              | 매표소       | <b>maepyoso</b>                           |
| tidy                       | 단정하다, 단정한 | <b>danjeong hada, danjeong<br/>han</b>    |
| tie (necktie)              | 넥타이       | <b>nektai</b>                             |
| tie, to                    | 매다        | <b>maeda</b>                              |
| time (occasion)            | 시간        | <b>sigan</b>                              |
| times (multiplying)        | ...배      | <b>...bae</b>                             |
| tin opener                 | 강통 따개     | <b>kkangtong ttagae</b>                   |
| tip (gratuity)             | 팁         | <b>tip</b>                                |

|                            |         |                    |
|----------------------------|---------|--------------------|
| tissues                    | 티슈      | tisyu              |
| tobacco                    | 담배      | dambae             |
| today                      | 오늘      | oneul              |
| toe                        | 발가락     | balkkarak          |
| together                   | 함께      | hamkke             |
| toilet                     | 화장실     | hwajangsil         |
| tomorrow                   | 내일      | naeil              |
| tongue                     | 혀       | hyeo               |
| tonight                    | 오늘밤     | oneul ppam         |
| tool, utensil, instrument  | 도구      | dogu               |
| tooth                      | 이       | i                  |
| toothache                  | 치통      | chitong            |
| top                        | 꼭대기     | kkokdaegi          |
| top up, to                 | 채우다     | chae uda           |
| torch, flashlight          | 손전등     | sonjeondeung       |
| total                      | 합계      | hapgye             |
| tough                      | 거칠다, 거친 | geochilda, geochin |
| tour                       | 투어      | tueo               |
| tour guide                 | 투어 가이드  | tueo gaideu        |
| tourist                    | 관광객     | gwangwanggaek      |
| tourist class              | 투어 클래스  | tueo keullaseu     |
| tourist information office | 관광 안내소  | gwangwang annaesu  |
| tow, to                    | 끌다      | kkeulda            |
| tower                      | 탑       | tap                |
| town                       | 마을, 시   | maeul, si          |
| town hall                  | 구청      | gucheong           |
| toy                        | 장난감     | jangnankkam        |
| traffic                    | 교통      | gyotong            |
| traffic light              | 신호등     | sinhodeung         |
| train                      | 기차      | gicha              |
| train station              | 역       | yeok               |
| train ticket               | 기차표     | gichapyo           |
| train timetable            | 기차 시간표  | gicha siganpyo     |
| translate, to              | 번역하다    | beonyeok hada      |
| travel agent               | 여행사     | yeohaengsa         |
| travel, to                 | 여행하다    | yeohaeng hada      |
| traveler                   | 여행자     | yeohaengja         |
| tree                       | 나무      | namu               |
| trip, journey              | 여행      | yeohaeng           |
| trouble                    | 문제      | munje              |
| trousers                   | 바지      | baji               |
| trust, to                  | 믿다      | mitda              |



trustworthy  
 try on (clothes), to  
 try on (footwear), to  
 try on (headgear), to  
 Tuesday  
 tunnel  
 turn off, to  
 turn on, to  
 turn over, to  
 TV  
 tweet  
  
 Twitter  
 twin bed  
 typhoon  
 tyre

믿을만한  
 입어보다  
 신어 보다  
 써보다  
 화요일  
 터널  
 끄다  
 켜다  
 뒤집다  
  
 티비  
 트위터하다  
  
 트위터  
 트윈 베드  
 태풍  
 타이어

**mideul manhan**  
**ibeo boda**  
**sineo boda**  
**sseo boda**  
**Hwayo il**  
**teoneol**  
**kkeuda**  
**kyeoda**  
**dwijipda**  
  
**Ti Bi**  
**teuwiteo hada/Twitter**  
**hada**  
  
**Teuwiteo/Twitter**  
**teuwin bedeu**  
**taepung**  
**ta ieo**

## U

ugly  
  
 ulcer  
 umbrella  
 under  
 underpants  
 underpass  
 understand, to  
 underwear  
 undressed, to get  
 unemployed  
 university  
 until  
  
 up, upward  
 upright  
 urgent  
 USB flash drive  
  
  
  
 use, to  
 usually

못생기다, 못생긴  
  
 궤양  
 우산  
 ...아래  
 팬티  
 지하도  
 이해하다  
 속옷  
 옷 벗다  
 실직한  
 대학  
 ...까지, -(으)ㄹ  
 때까지  
  
 ...위에, ...위로  
 똑바른, 똑바로  
 긴급한  
 USB (메모리 카드)  
  
  
 사용하다  
 보통

**motsaeng gida, motsaeng**  
**gin**  
  
**gweyang**  
**usan**  
**...arae**  
**paenti**  
**jihado**  
**ihae hada**  
**sogot**  
**ot beotda**  
**siljikan**  
**daehak**  
**...kkaji, -(eu)l ttaekkaji**  
  
**...wi e, ...wiro**  
**ttokba reun, ttokbaro**  
**gingeupan**  
**Yu e Seu Bi (memori**  
**kadeu)**  
  
**sayong hada**  
**botong**

## V

|                             |             |                                  |
|-----------------------------|-------------|----------------------------------|
| vacate, to                  | 비우다         | <b>bi uda</b>                    |
| vacation                    | 방학          | <b>banghak</b>                   |
| vaccination                 | 예방 접종       | <b>yebang jeopjong</b>           |
| valid                       | 유효하다, 유효한   | <b>yuhyo hada, yuhyo han</b>     |
| valley                      | 계곡          | <b>gyegok</b>                    |
| valuable                    | 귀중하다, 귀중한   | <b>gwijung hada, gwijung han</b> |
| valuables                   | 귀중품         | <b>gwijung pum</b>               |
| vase                        | 꽃병          | <b>kkotbyeong</b>                |
| vegetarian                  | 채식주의자       | <b>chaesik ju uija</b>           |
| vending machine             | 자동 판매기      | <b>jadong panmaegi</b>           |
| venereal disease            | 성병          | <b>seongbyeong</b>               |
| vertical                    | 수직이다, 수직(인) | <b>suji gida, sujig(in)</b>      |
| very                        | 아주          | <b>aju</b>                       |
| via                         | ...을/를 거쳐서  | <b>...eul/reul geochyeoseo</b>   |
| video camera                | 비디오 카메라     | <b>bidio kamera</b>              |
| video recorder              | 비디오 (레코드)   | <b>bidio (rekodeu)</b>           |
| view, look at, to           | 보다          | <b>boda</b>                      |
| view, panorama              | 경치          | <b>gyeongchi</b>                 |
| village                     | 마을          | <b>maeul</b>                     |
| visa                        | 비자          | <b>bija</b>                      |
| visit                       | 방문          | <b>bangmun</b>                   |
| visit, to pay a             | 방문하다        | <b>bangmun hada</b>              |
| visual (virtual) conference | 화상 회의       | <b>hwasang hoe ui</b>            |
| vitamin tablets             | 비타민(제)      | <b>bitamin(je)</b>               |
| vitamins                    | 비타민         | <b>bitamin</b>                   |
| volcano                     | 화산          | <b>hwasan</b>                    |
| volleyball                  | 배구          | <b>baegu</b>                     |
| vomit, to                   | 토하다         | <b>tohada</b>                    |

## W

|                     |      |                    |
|---------------------|------|--------------------|
| wait for, to        | 기다리다 | <b>gida rida</b>   |
| waiter, waitress    | 종업원  | <b>jongeo bwon</b> |
| waiting room        | 대기실  | <b>daegisil</b>    |
| wake someone up, to | 깨우다  | <b>kkae uda</b>    |
| wake up, to         | 깨어나다 | <b>kkae eonada</b> |
| walk (noun)         | 걸기   | <b>geotgi</b>      |
| walk, to            | 걸다   | <b>geotda</b>      |

|                      |                      |                                   |
|----------------------|----------------------|-----------------------------------|
| wall                 | 벽                    | byeok                             |
| wallet               | 지갑                   | jigap                             |
| want, to             | ...을/를 원하다,<br>-고 싶다 | ...eul/reul wonhada,<br>-go sipda |
| warn, to             | 경고하다                 | gyeonggo hada                     |
| warning              | 경고                   | gyeonggo                          |
| wash, to             | 씻다                   | ssitda                            |
| washing              | 세탁                   | setak                             |
| watch (wristwatch)   | (손목)시계               | (sonmok) sigye                    |
| watch, look, see, to | 보다                   | boda                              |
| water                | 물                    | mul                               |
| water-skiing         | 수상 스키                | susang seuki                      |
| waterfall            | 폭포                   | pokpo                             |
| way (direction)      | 쪽                    | jjok                              |
| way (method)         | 방법                   | bangbeop                          |
| way in               | 입구                   | ipgu                              |
| way out              | 출구                   | chulgu                            |
| we, us               | 우리                   | uri                               |
| weak                 | 약하다, 약한              | yak hada, yakhan                  |
| wear, to             | 입다                   | ipda                              |
| weather              | 날씨                   | nalssi                            |
| weather forecast     | 일기예보                 | ilgi yebo                         |
| wedding              | 결혼식                  | gyeolhonsik                       |
| Wednesday            | 수요일                  | Suyo il                           |
| week                 | 주                    | ju                                |
| weekday              | 주중                   | jujung                            |
| weekend              | 주말                   | jumal                             |
| weigh, to            | ...의 무게를 달다          | ...ui muge reul dalda             |
| weigh out, to        | 달아내다                 | dara naeda                        |
| Welcome!             | 어서 오세요!              | Eoseo oseyo!                      |
| well (for water)     | 우물                   | umul                              |
| well (good)          | 잘                    | jal                               |
| west                 | 서쪽                   | seojjok                           |
| Westerner            | 서양 사람                | Seoyang saram                     |
| wet                  | 젓다, 젖은               | jeotda, jeojeun                   |
| What?                | 뭐라고요?                | Mwora goyo?                       |
| wheel                | 바퀴                   | bakwi                             |
| wheelchair           | 휠체어                  | hwilche eo                        |
| When?                | 언제요?                 | Eonjeyo?                          |
| whenever             | -(으)ㄹ 때마다            | -(eu)l ttae mada                  |
| Where to?            | 어디로 가세요?             | Eodi ro gaseyo?                   |
| Where?               |                      | Eodi yo?                          |

|                                        |           |                                  |
|----------------------------------------|-----------|----------------------------------|
| Which?                                 | 어디요?      | <b>Eoneu geoyo?</b>              |
| white                                  | 어느 거요?    | <b>hayata, hayan</b>             |
| white wine                             | 하얗다, 하얀   | <b>baekpo doju</b>               |
| Who?                                   | 백포도주      | <b>Nuguyo?</b>                   |
| Why?                                   | 누구요?      | <b>Waeyo?</b>                    |
| widow                                  | 왜요?       | <b>gwabu</b>                     |
| widower                                | 과부        | <b>horabi</b>                    |
| wife                                   | 홀아비       | <b>anae</b>                      |
| wind, breeze                           | 아내        | <b>baram</b>                     |
| window (for paying,<br>buying tickets) | 바람        | <b>changgu</b>                   |
| 창문                                     | 창구        |                                  |
| window (in house)                      | 창문        | <b>changmun</b>                  |
| windscreen wiper                       | 와이퍼       | <b>waiepo</b>                    |
| windscreen, windshield                 | (자동차) 앞유리 | <b>(jadong cha) amnyuri</b>      |
| wine                                   | 와인        | <b>wain</b>                      |
| winter                                 | 겨울        | <b>gyeoul</b>                    |
| wire                                   | 철사        | <b>cheolssa</b>                  |
| wireless connection                    | 무선 인터넷    | <b>museon inteonet</b>           |
| wish, to                               | 바라다       | <b>barada</b>                    |
| witness                                | 목격자       | <b>mokgyeokja</b>                |
| woman                                  | 여자        | <b>yeoja</b>                     |
| wonderful                              | 멋지다, 멋진   | <b>meotjida, meotjin</b>         |
| wood                                   | 나무        | <b>namu</b>                      |
| wool                                   | 울, 양모     | <b>ul, yangmo</b>                |
| word                                   | 단어        | <b>daneo</b>                     |
| work, occupation                       | 일, 직업     | <b>il, jigeop</b>                |
| work, to                               | 일하다       | <b>ilhada</b>                    |
| working day                            | 근무일       | <b>geunmu il</b>                 |
| worn out (clothes)                     | 달아버리다/-버린 | <b>dara beorida, dara beorin</b> |
| worn out, tired                        | 피곤하다, 피곤한 | <b>pigon hada, pigon han</b>     |
| worry, to                              | 걱정하다      | <b>geokjeong hada</b>            |
| wound                                  | 상처        | <b>sangcheo</b>                  |
| wrap, to                               | 싸다        | <b>ssada</b>                     |
| wrench, spanner                        | 스퍼너       | <b>seupaeneo</b>                 |
| wrist                                  | 손목        | <b>sonmok</b>                    |
| write down                             | 적다        | <b>jeokda</b>                    |
| write, to                              | 쓰다        | <b>sseuda</b>                    |
| writing pad                            | 공책        | <b>gongchaek</b>                 |
| writing paper                          | 편지지       | <b>pyeonjiji</b>                 |
| wrong (mistaken)                       | 틀리다, 틀린   | <b>teul lida, teullin</b>        |

## Y

|                                  |              |                                |
|----------------------------------|--------------|--------------------------------|
| yawn                             | 하품           | <b>hapum</b>                   |
| year                             | 년            | <b>nyeon</b>                   |
| years old                        | ...살, ...세   | <b>...sal, ...se</b>           |
| yellow                           | 노랗다, 노란      | <b>norata, noran</b>           |
| yes                              | 네, 예         | <b>ne, ye</b>                  |
| yes please                       | 네, 그렇게 해 주세요 | <b>ne, geureoke hae juseyo</b> |
| yesterday                        | 어제           | <b>eoje</b>                    |
| you (audience)                   | 여러분          | <b>yeoreobun</b>               |
| you (familiar)                   | 너, 너희(들)     | <b>neo, neohui(deul)</b>       |
| you (female)                     | 아가씨, 아주머니    | <b>agassi, a jumeoni</b>       |
| you (male)                       | 아저씨, 선생님     | <b>ajeossi, seon saengnim</b>  |
| You're welcome<br>(to "Thanks!") | 괜찮아요!        | <b>Gwaencha nayo!</b>          |
| youth hostel                     | 유스 호스텔       | <b>yuseu hoseutel</b>          |

## Z

|                |     |                   |
|----------------|-----|-------------------|
| zip (fastener) | 지퍼  | <b>jipeo</b>      |
| zoo            | 동물원 | <b>dongmulwon</b> |
| zucchini       | 애호박 | <b>aehobak</b>    |

*“Did you like this book. Please post review.”*